



Books Sold by T. Passinger, at the Three Bibles on London-Bridge.

**T**HE Famous History of the Destruction of Troy, in Three Parts, Quarto.

The Honour of Chivalry, Or, The Famous and Delectable History of *Don Bellianis of Greece*, Quarto.

The History of *Amadis de Gaul*, Quarto.

The Famous History of *Montelion*, Quarto.

The Excellent History of *Paladine of England*, Quarto.

The History of *Jack of Newberry*, Quarto.

Where you may also be furnished with all sorts of Histories, and other Books, fit for the use and practice of all persons in England, Scotland and Ireland.

# VALENTINE

AND

# ORSON,

The Two SONS of  
THE

# Emperour of Greece.

Newly Corrected and Amended, with New Pictures, Lively  
Expressing the

# HISTORY.



London, Printed by J. R. for T. Passinger, at the Sign of the Three  
Bibles on London-Bridge, MDCLXXXVIII.

THE  
P R I N T E R  
TO THE  
R E A D E R.

**A**mongst many Histories, as well *Ancient* as *Modern*, which have in Former times borrowed our *English Phrase* to speak withal, this (*Gentle Reader*) here of *Valentine and Orson*, Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*, now once again Newly Imprinted, craves a free passage of thy Acceptance; and puts it self to the censure of those Historiographers, which make *Invention* the Eldest Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*. Therefore considering with my self the worthiness of the Story, with the Variety thereof; being many Years ago first written in *French*, and since Translated into *English*: where it hath found a favourable welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours: I have now again to my Cost and Charge, Published it to the Eye and Ear of such, (to be seen or heard) as take pleas-

## To the Reader.

sure in these kind of Writings. It is furnished with much state of matter, Elegancy and Invention, and Decked forth with many fair Models and Lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the History, which I have caused to be newly Cut; not only to make it carry the more grace in Reading, but a more Lustre to Heroick Achievements of Knightly adventures. For here may the Princely Mind see his Own Model: the Knightly Tilter his Martial Achievements: and the Amorous Lady her Dulcet Passages of Love: Here are Countries, with the Courts of Kings deciphered: the Magnitude of Honours laid open: and the True Form of Turnaments described: and between Knight and Knight are here most lively Combats Portrayed; to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his Time ill Spent, or his Labour lost, where the Matter affords such Copiousness of Pleasure. The History for the Strangeness, may well bear the Title of Courtly Contents, for indeed it is a Garden of Courtly delights, wherein Grow Flowers of an Extraordinary Savour, that gives a Scent in the bosoms of Nobility, Ladies, Knights, and Gentlewomen. It gives also a Working to the Minds of the Dull-Country-Swains: and (as it were) leads them to search out for Martial Achievements, befitting many Pastimes. Herein is al-

## To the Reader

so Contained the True difference Betwixt Art and Nature; for in VALENTINE is Comprehended the Education of Art; and in ORSON the true working of Nature; for being both one Emperours Sons, the One of them brought up in a Princes Palace, the Other among Savage Beasts; Now makes the Current Pass with more Admiration to the Reader: Mark but the Carriage of Wild Orson, and you shall find that Nature hath a being above Art, but yet nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working. The History here Written was Translated out of French into English, above a Hundred Years ago, by one Henry Watson, and since that time, it hath been by him Corrected, and put into a more Plyant Stile, and so followed on to the Press, till this present Edition, which I have (as you see) here Published forthy Benefit: Therefore (Gentle Reader) accept of this my cost and pains, who had rather prove a loser, then so worthy a story as this is, should lie in Obscurity; for there are few subjects of humane carriage, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into. If you desire to see the cares and troubles of Kings, here they are: If you desire to know the battels of Martial Champions, here they are: If of Courtly Turnaments and Combats of Princes, here they are: If of the Travels of Knightly adventures, here they are: If of the Sorrows

## To the Reader.

Sorrows of Distressed Ladies, here they are ; If of strange Births, and savage Educations, here they are : If of Friends long lost, and of their Joyful Meeting again, here they are : If of Charms and Enchantments here they are : If of the Reward of Traytors and Treasons, here they are : If of long Captivities and Imprisonments, here they are : Yea, here are all the Varieties and Passages that may furnish forth a History fit for a Readers pleasure, for no unseemly words or speeches are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried.

Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this Old Story into a new Livery, and not to suffer that to lie Buried, that a little Cost may keep alive.

And so (Gentle Reader) craving thy kind Acceptance, I wish thee as much Willingness to the Reading, as I have been forward in the Printing : And so I End.

FAREWELL.

The

# THE HISTORY OF Valentine and Orson.

## CHAP. I.

How King *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha* ; and how he gave his Sister *Bellisant* in Marriage to *Alexander*, Emperour of *Constantinople*.

**V**V<sup>e</sup> find it credibly set down in Antient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble and Valliant *Pepin*, some time a King of France, took to Wife one *Bertha*, who was descended of no less than Royal Race : This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously cumbered with many adversities and troubles, continually beset on every side : which with great Patience she always suffered.

The chief Instrument of all this Treacherous mischief towards this good Queen, was Plotted and Effected by a False and Cursed Old Woman, who first of all brought her in Disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite Banished his Bed, while she in a Cunning manner brought in a Daughter of her own in the good Queen *Bertha*'s stead. This Old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to Effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled *Bertha*) it so came to pass, that King *Pepin* had Two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufrey* and *Henry*,  
15 both



both which Sons so grieved the King, and so wasted the Country of France by their Outrages and Fury, that in the end they caused the Queen Bertha to be utterly banished, where she passed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, and abundance of sorrow. She long endured those miserable days of sorrow, at the last began to receive comfort again: For it so chanced after, at the earnest suit & request of divers great Peers and Lords of France, this good Queen began to find favour again with R. Pepin her Husband (who when he knew the Treachery that the wicked Old Monian had plotted against her) much bewailed the miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former bed, in short time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the puissant: But the King himself was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid Haufrey and Henry, and at the last compelled by them to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History.

My purpose now at this present is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book; and especially, the Valiant Acts and Deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orson.

This R. Pepin had a Sister named Bellisant, a Woman of great wit, beauty, and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her brother Pepin's love mightily to appear to all the world; in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced so, that the fame of this lovely personage spread it self so abroad in other Regions, that at last R. Alexander, Emperour of Constantinople, who was much enamored with her beauty, came into France, accompanied with a gallant troop of his nobility, all richly set out with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a Personage.

This Emperour, shortly after his arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich Habilliments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepin's Court, to declare unto him the cause of his coming, which was to enjoy his fair Sister Bellisant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto R. Pepin, declaring unto him the cause of their Emperours coming into his Country: which when R. Pepin understood, he joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperours request.

King

King Pepin understanding this sudden (but joyful) News, made great preparations in his Court, for the entertaining of this Noble Emperour: All things being in readiness, R. Pepin with all his noble train, went to meet Alexander Emperour of Constantinople: whom when they met, they entertained with great joy, & conducted him to the Court of France, where fair Bellisant was, and she entertained him with no less joy, then her Brother R. Pepin had done before; and there they spent their time in great joy and triumphing.

This Marriage being once publicly known among all the Inhabitants, joy began to shew forth it self on every side, for such a happy Day, wherein such good Alliance was knit between the Emperour Alexander, and Pepin King of France: that triumphs began in every place, against the Nuptial Days appearance: When the time appointed came: these two were espoused in all Honour fitting for their Estates, and largeness shewed it self on



every side. This marriage feast endured long, but at last being ended, the Emperour (assisted with all his worthy Train) made preparation to take their leave of King Pepin his brother in Law, & take their way towards Constantinople, with his fair Empress Bellifant. Being thus all mounted on horse-back, King Pepin also set forward with his Brother Emperour, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on every side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find Legs to go, found eyes to weep for the departure of their fair Lady and Mistress, the new Empress of Constantinople.

At last, both these mighty Princes came near unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more thanks in tears than words, the which I am not able to express: But above all, the Emperour yielded King Pepin worthy thanks for his quick, sudden and generous consent, in giving to him his fair Sister Bellifant, and with so frank and free a heart to yield him good will. At which words of the Emperour unto King Pepin, the latter presently embraced him in his arms: saying, Fair Sir, and my right Loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your state required, nor with such triumphs and Magnificence as became me, but in that you have so graciously accepted my small power, I hold my self content in that I have done, but not that I should have done: and therefore there belongeth small thanks to me, but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your wife: whereby (I trust) long friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witness of all that are here present, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raise in France, to adventure for your safety and succour all the days of my life.

King Pepin being now departed from the Emperour, turned himself to his Sister Bellifant, and in this manner takes his leave: Fair Sister (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of France, wherein you have spent your Infant days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better conditions. Also let your behaviour be such, that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole company of all the Powers, may have honour and joy in you.

Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you,

so

so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, & give no ear to wicked counsel, or to such as would move you to disloyalty: For you are the creature that I have alwayes dearest loved in all the world; wherefore, if I should hear tydings other then good from you, or of you, it would be the only cause to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Willaver: the young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt joy and fear, was not able to answer a word; and what with tears and sighs, the passage of her tongue was utterly stopt. When all the Lords and Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was let fall many a brinish tear, as well on their parts of France, as they also that were to go for Constantinople, but especially for the departure of the Fair Lady Bellifant.

All Duties of love being ended, King Pepin returned into France, and the Emperour by this time mounted upon the Seas, had wind and water at such will & pleasure, that within short space, he with all his Train arrived with safety at Constantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honor and Triumph, all which, here were needless to recount. But mark what hapned, not long after these joys & triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady Bellifant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations and tears were placed, and all for the said poor Lady, which by treason and false accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.

## CHAP. II.

How the Arch-priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperour his Lord and Master in making love to fair Bellifant the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon.

**I**n Constantinople Lived an Arch-priest, in whom the Emperour put such Trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosome thoughts unto his Secrecy: And in the end made him sole Governour and Commander over all his house; as also, he was the Emperours

Emperors Principal Confessor, and one of his greatest Favourites, for the which he afterwards had many a sorrowful heart.

The Bishop forgetting all the Emperors favours, and great honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures, insatiable lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only fit time and opportunity to settle this his determination. At last it chanced on a day, that he espied her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-priest well observing, he came into the chamber likewise, and sat down by her: At last he began to behold her with a smiling and jesting countenance, of all which (the Lady mistrusted nothing) for that she very well remembered his greatness with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the House, and she never so much as once Dreaming or thinking such an evil thought; as that he thereby would colour so filthy an act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, and so much affected him: But there is never more danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many gestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and virtuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Soberaign Lady (qd. he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears, but rather let them wide open to hear my rude words, especially, for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair Person, and for whose love I have suffered intolerable torments in my fiery bosom. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty of your admirable person, and the supernal form wherein you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my spirits, broken my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of all rest, both by night and day, and only with doting upon your peerless Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my meat, drink, manners, yea, and my very countenance; Inasmuch, that only my request, and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained unto: If Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these my unreflex thoughts (than

which

which nothing will sooner cut my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present death, and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a denial from those your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Admirable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful, be not then the cause that I should determine my life by losing your love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty affection. But Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my power, to absolve you from your sins, and injoy your Penitence: which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easy, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest, this excellent reprehension and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust, disloyal, and Devilish Priest, stain to all thy profession: How darest thou once open thy perjured mouth to such a mass of villanies, as thereon may ensue? First, as I may say against the sacred order; Secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked practices. Thou (I say) devil, and worse than devil, thou that shouldst be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conversation, in this thou goest about my utter ruin and destruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperor trusted to be in thee; I never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperor my loving Lord, should be so dishonored either by me in my body, or through my privacy in any other manner: I false accursed Priest, beware wherein thou shouldst deliver me! First, unto the utter ruin and spoil of mine honour; next, shut up my body in dishonorable shame for ever amongst men; and lastly bring my soul into the jaws of death and the devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish provocations to lust, and leave for ever hereafter to solicit me, or any other virtuous creature.

creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shameful downfal, and a most damnable death. Wherefore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewell of the worthy Emperess, stung the Priest at the very heart, but at that time durst make no further reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage and great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving pardon for these his bold, satyry and rash follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to restore his honour. Thus being sore troubled in mind divers & sundry ways, he resolved what to do upon revenge against this innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady. And seeing the Emperour knew nothing in this matter from the Emperess Bellisant, how the Arch-Priest would have inticed her to dishonour, and would have drawn her to disloyalty to the Emperour, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperour for divers crimes, as hereafter more at large followeth to be spoken in the next ensuing Chapter.

### CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellisant*, to save his own Honour practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.

**T**he Arch-Priest having now begun to set abroad his Devilish Practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the Reputation of his former honours which the Emperour had bestowed upon him; whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperour, as also seemed to shew how great a care he had of his preservation, and to make known his loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his estate and person. So it befel, that on a day when he espied a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperour all alone, he began to break with him on this manner, as followeth.

Right

Right High and Mighty Emperour, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount & highly esteem of the many and innumerable Favours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: Wherefore as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other; Wherefore it is my Duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person: wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to hide any thing from you: & the rather; for that it nearly toucheth your person profit and honour. O Emperour, thus it is; Bellisant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord; for she wandreth in her love, giveth that unto another, which is proper only to your self: To name the Person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any man: but yet know for certain, that by the way of confession I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the name of him that thus usurps your Bed: but let it suffice, there is not a more unclean & lascivious woman lieth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed, and my duty towards you approb'd by what I have told you. My advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the preservation of your Honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleness and wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore; and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperour having heard this long accusation, little mistrusted the treachery of this Arch-Priest, but gave Credit to all his fair, but false words, and therewithal became extream penible and sad: that his trust in her beauteous Love, had been thus deceived. At last, having

C



having many days in many places uttered forth many discontented gestures, words and sighs, and many grievous exclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave rest awhile unto his discontented Passions: but awakened revenge to wait upon a fitter opportunity. And upon a day entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady Bellifant, without speaking any word to her at all, in a most fierce, rude and unmannerly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in such a horrid manner; that the blood besmear'd all her face in most inhumane sort. The Lady receiving from her Lord such unlookt for welcome, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as she was able began to say: Alas (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome out-rage? I call all the Gods to witness, I never did any thing in my life, either against your honour or life, or ever prostituted my body to any strangers love. The Emperour not being thus satisfied, replied, saying: Thou whore, I am too well informed of thy proceedings; and cursed be the day and hour that ever I saw thy deceitful face, and therewithal, without all pity dashed her head against the ground, leaving her speechless, inasmuch that all the Damoysels, her attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of life. Upon this there arose up in the Court a most pittifull outcry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a trance; at which disaster all amazed, some ran to take up the dead body of the Emperess, others took upon them to speak unto the Emperour, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undescrib'd rage, whose words unto him were as followeth.

Alas (O great Sovereign) what may be the cause of this your sudden passion in delivering unto danger of death, this so modest, chaste and noble a Lady: a Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never from the least spark of dishonour, neither towards you nor any in this Empire: Wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger against this harmless Lady. The Emperour nothing for all this relenting, answered; speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear, how cunningly she hath deluded me: therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to death, and he or they who shall hereunto again say, I shall make

make him partaker in death with this wicked and disloyal strumpet.

These words were no sooner uttered, but up rose a worthy, wise and Courageous bold Baron, and spake unto the Emperour after this manner. Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused wife, sister to a great King, namely, Pepin la. of France, who when he shall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a courageous heart; and a brotherly affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, Houses, Cities & Children, forgetting Mercy, and only pursuing revenge upon us for these merciless and cruel deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and murther her on this manner wherein you have proceeded against her: The worthy Baron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperour, and in tears very submissively and lamentably thus she spake:

Alas (my Lord) take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil act, as I never so much as thought any evil against your person or dignity: at least, my Lord, if your compassion be quite distant from pitying me, yet pity the fruit of my Body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appease your anger towards me, then let my body be imprison'd in some strong Tower, till the time of my delivery, & then do with my body what pleaseth you, so the fruit of my body may be kept safe. In this dolorous passion she proceeded so far, that whilst with her sighs and tears following one the other, it would have grieved the fiercest heart that ever rested in the bosom of the vilest Tyrant that ever Reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperour, who was so wholly bewitched with the False and Traiterous Accusation of the Arch-Priest, that all Lenity set apart, he burst out in this manner: Thou false strumpet, The child thou goest withal is to me no joy; but rather great dishonour, for thy behaviour and thy disloyalty hath made such a separation between us, that notwithstanding thy dissolute life, thou hast made another partner in my love: The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperour, by a common consent removed her out of his presence into another Chamber, she be-

ing unto her all the labour they could both in action and gesture, although her fair face was soze deformed and besmeared with blood; having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were attendants, fetched water to wash her face, and did all they could to revive her expiring spirits. Being thus in another chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pity the water trickled down his cheeks, and at the last began his speech in this manner.

Ah Madam, I plainly see that you are traiterously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant curses upon that person that hath thus purchased your extreame miseries; but gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, I trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into France, towards your Brother K. Pepin, who gave me and my service unto you, to attend you in all these misfortunes; all which I will to the utmost of my power undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my counsel, and free your self out of danger, for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperour will prosecute Revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a shameful Death.

Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply; Ah Blandiman, I know thy faithful service towards me, but yet if I should follow thy advice, and stral out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperour throweth upon me, and thereby yield me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperours Choller was somewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused Bellisant to be quickly brought before him: when she was come his heart trembled and fretted for very anger that he durst not put her to death, fearing the puissance and might of her Brother K. Pepin, and therefore burst forth into these speeches: Thou false and accursed woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in Question: I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brothers sake, the valliant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all fair Ladies, but for his sake I spare thy life, stand forth and hear thy judgment. I banish thee out of my Country and Empire,

pire, expressly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou shalt ever be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer death in all extremity: Also, I straightly command that none of my Country dare be once so hardy as to give aid, or accompany you, save only your servant Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. So, get thee presently out of my sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my bosome. The Emperour having pronounced sentence against her, the Empress Bellisant, accompanied with her servant Blandiman, speedily hasted to horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing through the fair City towards one of the gates thereof, there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much lamenting the loss of so fair a Lady, and so lovely an Empress. When she came to the utmost part, even ready to go out of the gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable howling of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City of Constantinople. When she was out of the walls of the City, and but newly entred into the wide fields, she began to fall into a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to see how shamefully and dishonourably she was handled, causeless. Again, to think upon her birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the misfortune wherein she was like to finish the rest of her days, it was her at last from tears to utter her griefs in these words, Alas, in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall from so high estate, to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in: Woe is me, the unhappiest among Women, now are all my joys turn'd Toppie-Turby, my laughter is turn'd into weeping, my Songs converted into sighs: Instead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloather, now I am glad of all manner of mean attire, my precious Stones of inestimable value are all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand over all my garments. O you fields and woods, to you, I make my moan, for other company I have none, consider my exile, and help to bewail my misfortune: O would the Gods had pitied my distress, and made me the poorest Among Creatures, then had not fortune given me so foul a fall, at least, my poor Estate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beauteous Sun send forth his beams on a wretch so miserable? why doth the Earth bear such a creature, that is composed of calamities? It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my

heart's sorrow: O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by the wicked treason hath brought me to this doleful, I may well rouse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee only am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what shouldst thou do with such a doleful sight to thy Sister: It had been better I had never been born, than that I should prove such a stain to thy kingly House. As she was thus complaining to her secret heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swoon as she sat on horse back, and was ready at that instant to have fallen off her horse, ere her servant could alight and recover her: but moved all the speediest means for her recovery: at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her: Alas! Gadam, be not so discomforted, neither let despair so far stare upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will help and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly spied a fountain, towards the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long over-tired senses. Were at this spring leade we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traitorous Arch-Priest who was the cause of all these treacherous and evil practises.

## C H A P. IV.

How the Arch-Priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress Bellisant, who was lately Banished.

**T**he Arch-Priest having now wrought the banishment of Fair Bellisant, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire: wherefore in all haste he changed his white Robet into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his side a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the fastest that could be had in all Constantinople: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellisant was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her servant Blandi-

man

man, sitting by a Fountain, full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable fortunes; Blandiman using all the means he could to comfort her.

This false Priest from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest, her Enemy: but coming nearer her, she soon discovered him, and being struck with a sudden fear, spake thus to her servant: Alas (quoth she) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further Mischance. Lady (quoth Blandiman) banish fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life lasteth: By this time that they had ended their speech each to other, the Arch-priest was ready to alight from his horse to salute the Lady in all courteous behaviour; and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late Honoured Empress, since thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by sentence given against thee by the Emperoz, so it is, What if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Lodge, accept me into thy Favour; and so grant what I have long sought at thy hands, I will bring it to pass that the Emperoz shall again recall thy Banishment, and make thy greatness of State shine more bright then ever before: Therefore advise you well, for I protest that I offer to you, is onely tending to your good and Advancement. Ha! (quoth the Lady) thou Disloyal and Trayterous Adversary, I have no great cause to bestow Love, where my life hath been put in jeopardy: It is onely thou that hast wrought my overthrow, and thou it is, that makest me to spend the remnant of my days in more misery then ever Lady is able to endure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth such Curtes against me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to help upon you more joys than ever you as yet in all your life enjoyed: and in speaking these words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking to have kissed her; but Blandiman perceiving his intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-priest so mighty a Stroke that he felled him to the Earth, and with the vigour of the blow, brake out one of his Teeth: The Arch-priest had no sooner



sooner recovered himself from the ground, but suddenly betook him to his sword, which Blandiman perceiving, betook him to a Glave which he had about him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous fight between them.

This encounter lasted so long that they were both wounded, but still they continued fighting, till at last it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who perceiving a far off their fierce encounter, cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, (quod he) leave off and shew the cause of this your variance, & I shall do my best to end this controversie, Sir, (quod Blandiman) let us first try our right by our weapons, and afterwards we will be ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear silence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth she) as you ever pityed woman, pity my case; for this Man whom here you see armed, is the false and Traiterous Arch-Priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to his wicked and unsatiable Lust; Also, this is he that hath made a separation between me and the Emperour my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pityed her Misery, and began thus unto the Arch-Priest: Sir Priest, leave off your enterprise, and dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady, for if the Emperour did but understand this villany, he would soon end thy life in infamy, as thou well deservest. As soon as the Arch-priest had heard his speech, he forsook his combat, and fled as fast as he could through the wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his purpose toward the Lady: though he conveyed his body out of sight, yet his villanies were afterward disclosed. After his departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all sorrowful, with her wounded servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comforted her, saying, Alas Lady! I see that this Arch-priest hath falsly betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Emperour, but I will promise you, that if I live I will bewray all these treacheries to the Emperour, & bring the Traitor to a shameful death, and so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her horse,

horse, and himself on his, so riding on together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days, during which time her servant was recover'd of his wounds, and then forward towards France, the Lady still sorrowful and complaining in this manner: Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother, & the Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable deed, and as a common Harlot, banished from the Emperour of Constantinople? Alas! I am persuaded that the King my brother will easily entertain it, that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger care not to deliver me over to death. Lady, (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of these discourses, they had passed many Countries and regions, till at last they came into France, and passing by Orleans, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourn. So entering into a Forrest near unto Orleans, there hapned new Miseries unto this Empress, of which more hereafter ensueth.

#### CHAP. V.

How *Bellifant* in her Banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how she lost them.

**B**ellifant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forrest. The time of her delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to her servant on this manner. Alas (quoth she) help, help, I say, to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make haste & find me the help of women, wheresoever thou canst get any, for I can go no further. My pains to break forth in multitudes upon me. Blandiman her servant did as she commanded, and so that he knew not how to find the same place again, he set a special mark, that he might the reader come thither again: and so betaking him to Horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some Woman to help this Distressed Lady.

He being gone the Lady was left comfortless all alone without succour.



succour of any creature, so that at last she was delivered of two fair Sons in the Desolate Forrest. These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh misery, worse then all the rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under the tree, & her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great pace halted into the thickest of the Forrest: This strange and unlookt for accident, frighted the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas! it little abailed her to make any further pursuit, for she never came unto the sight of the Child, till by miracle

it was at length disclosed. So long wandered this Lady up and down from place to place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being over-wearied with travel, she fell into a great sickness, insomuch that at the last she was thereby near deprived of her life, and immediately fell into a swoon upon the cold earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this extasie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which she left under the Tree.

It hapned the same day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his Journey from Paris (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards Constantinople, to visit his Sister Bellisant, and striking through Orleance, he made such haste, that he entred into the same Forrest whither his Sister was lately delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had hapned. Now as the King passed through this Forrest, he espied lying under a tree alone, the other Son of Bellisant, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants: By Gods, by the appointment of the Gods, see I have here found a fair infant, even a Child. By the Gods (said the Lords) you say truth. Alas, said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my charge so long as it liveth, and it shall want no manner of attendance, but be used as it were mine own. For if it lives until it comes to mans estate, I will endow it with Lands and Possessions after the most nobill manner: and therewithal calling unto him one of the Squires, gave him the whole charge thereof, saying to him on this manner; Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, see it baptized, provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto, the King little suspecting that this Child was his Son.

The Squire as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his own name, called Valentine. After, he sought out a Nurse for the Child, and gave it great attendance, according to the Kings command. This done, the King proceeded on his journey towards Constantinople, to see his lovely and beautiful Sister Bellisant, but as he could pass through the Forrest, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greatest Extremity of Child-Birth: Blandiman espied the King, knew him, and suddenly alighted from his



next, for my Banishment, and notably for the loss of my two Babes, issued from the Womb Royal of the Emperor of Constantinople: but seeing all these miseries have even tyr'd themselves upon my very health, I come death, and know what to do as but prolong. At this while Blandiman was ear-witness of all these piteous plaints, in such manner that he grew even weary of her weeping, & in the best manner he could, comforted her weeping Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that she would leave her weeping, and be taken her self to bed rest: whereunto she gave consent, he accompanied with a Woman he had by chance met in a neighbouring Village, whereon they lodged and waited for her, till she had something recovered her strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her miseries. Blandiman began to speak with his Lady on this instance: Lady (quoth he) it was my shame in looking you in the moon, to fight upon your pillow with Pains, and torment of no what tydings: But this I now know, & full of anger against you; wherefore Lady, my counsel for this your health not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you that have but slender welcome: for upon further questions demanded, and answered so soon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had killed you, he highly gave credit that yours was the fault, and therefore he lays all the blame on you: O! (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to pass, and I well perceive that I am beset with adversaries on every side: Well, be it as it may be, the Emperor hath eras'd me without cause, what then shall I do; I will never return again to Paris, but take my way into some remote Land, where my body with my faults shall be smothered: for my brothers anger is grown so great, that he could willingly deliver me over to death, therefore it is better for me and to save my Life, then fall into the fury of so angry a Brother. This doleful speech she delivered in tears, which Blandiman perceiving, said unto her: Lady led me off your tears, for be assured of my faithful fidelity, and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. With this (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange adventure, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers; where now we shall be forced to leave them with sorrowful hearts, and return again to speak something of the Bear that carried away one of the Children.

## CHAP. VI.

## Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady Bellifant's Children.

The Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto his Cave, which was dark and obscure: In this Cave the Old Bear had four Young Ones, amongst whom he laid the Child to be devoured, but mark the Chance, and you shall find it at last Miraculous, for all this while the Young Bears did do it no harm, but with their Rough Paws strook it softly: The Old Bear perceiving





they did not believe it, shewed a most kind of favour toward it : insomuch that the King it, and gave it his young ones the space of one whole year. It was the reason of the nourishment it received from the Bear, became more like a beast, and as he grew in strength, began to range in the woods, and when he met with other beasts in the forest, and got such mastery over them, that they began to leave the place wherein he came, he was so excellent fierce and strong. And in this beast-like state passed he the term of his life, till he came to such strength, that scarce any man could stand before him, and he began to fall into his hands. He was then taken, and after eat their flesh, more like a beast, than a man, and became a Creature : His name was called Orson, because he was taken by his Nurse, and also was called Orson, because he was taken by his Nurse.

This Bear-man lived in the forest, and was so strong (were he never so hardy) that he was the terror of the Realm of France, that they of the Kingdom were so afraid and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he was so strong, and so cunning, but passed through them all, and was never hurt : All the time he alone in the forest, and was so strong, he neither wore garment, nor had any kind of food.

Once we led by the way in the forest, and look a little what became of the Lady Bellifant, and her Servant Blandiman ; and we shall suddenly find them standing and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever lamenting and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety. But in the end of her sorrowful wishes, yet she passed on her weary journey, sometimes by Sea, sometimes by Land, till at length she came to a place in Portugal, on the which stood an invincible Castle, kept by a Giant, called Ferragus, so great, and of such puissance, that none of the world could bear the living Trump of his great voice.

It so happened at that time, that every ship that passed by this Coast was to pay tribute to this Giant, which he himself did daily come aboard to receive. At length he came into the ship wherein the Lady Bellifant, and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all manner

manner of rich Merchandizes) so casting his eyes about, he espied Bellifant, which he kindly took by the hand, and lead her into the Castle to his wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady.) Blandiman followed his Lady also, fearing the Giant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence, but presented her to his wife, who received her gladly, and had great joy at the gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Giant having charged his wife to use her and Blandiman her Squire honourably. During her abode in the Castle she would often shed tears, when she bethought her of the loss of her two Children ; which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her next her own person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took in her company. Within this Castle she carried a long time, and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you somewhat of the Emperor of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.

## C H A P. VII.

How by the Council of the Arch Priest, new Customs, and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople, and how the Treason came to light.

ALEXANDER the Emperor having shamefully expelled Bellifant his wife, sister to St. Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact : but by the cursed counsel of the Arch-Priest, unto whose words the Emperor gave such Credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the ears of the said Emperor : Insomuch that he continually heaped new Honours upon that Traitorous Priest, advancing him even above the highest in the Empire, and whatsoever he commanded was effected. At last, having gotten all power and Authority in his hands, he began to enhance the Customs and Taxes of the City of Constantinople, which exactions of his against all Reason, struck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the residue of these his forced impositions, (it happened that according to their yearly Customs) there was held a great Fair in the City, which falls out about the month of September. Whereunto resorted many people for divers occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair or Part-day being come, the Emperor gave the charge thereof unto this

this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, & to the same purpose armed 200 men to guard his own person: being thus accompanied he took his way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperour had so lately bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold wares, the Merchant was there present (of whom you have heard before) namely, the Merchant that came riding by the way whilst Blandiman (the Distressed Lady Belifants Esquire) and the treacherous Arch-Priest was fighting: the Arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his villany should now come to light: The presence of this Merchant much troubled the Arch-Priest, inasmuch as he wished, (if it were possible) his Death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the Authority that he now had in his hands, but still he feared some great Tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant, among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares, as Cloth of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money than any five Merchants beside: The Fair being ended, the Arch-Priest sent forth his Officers to demand and receive his accustomed duties due upon the sale of those Merchandizes: One Officer came unto this Merchant, and said: Sir, you must pay Ten-pence on every pound that you have taken, for so it is Ordained by the great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Merchant hereat being angry, said, Cursed be that Disloyal Arch-Priest, for he is the only cause of these new raised exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his Descent, and with Shame and infamy had ended his Dayes: At which reproachful words against the Arch-Priest, the Officer took his staff and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the blood gushed out. When the Merchant feeling the blood about his ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this arose a great Rout throughout the Fair, inasmuch that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the Arch-Priest: The Arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The Arch-Priest fearing the People, sent him away to the

the Emperour, for nothing could satisfie him but his life: But mark, in seeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchased his own Death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the Emperours Pallace; wherean he in person sat as Judge. The Emperour being set, the Arch-Priest brought his Advocate to Plead his Cause; which was to this effect, That the Merchant had committed Murder, & also had spoken many opprobrious words against the said Arch-Priest: The Advocate having ended his Accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperour, and said, Mighty and most Excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but Audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great importance, that it touches your Person even in the highest Degree of Treason. Say on, said the Emperour; Mighty Emperour, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Pallace, that none depart from this place: The Emperour did as he requested; Then said the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the Honour of the Emperour and the Triumphant reign of his Person, attend my words: For the time is come that the Treason of the Cursed Arch-Priest will now be revealed and come to Light. Then thus great Emperour, this is that cursed Man whom you have ever nourished, and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the Discomfort, betwixt you and your Vertuous Lady, whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Countrey, and by whom you have received more Dishonour than ever he reaped honour from you; For it had been his part most of any to have nourished & advanced your Renown, and to have preserved your honour, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by these his wicked Projects, and brought upon you great scandal among all Nations; for he secretly and under-hand made Love to your Emperours, but he denied him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelihood to accomplish his Desire, it drove him into a thousand Fears, lest this his Disloyal act should come to light; and therefore devised to falsifie into your Ears, her faithful love into your Ears: Of all which his false accusation

ens, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he lyeth like a Traytor, and for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these Eyes of mine were witnesses.

It so happened on a day (after the Banishment of the Empress Bellisant) as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel through a Wood: at last passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the Combate with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be Blandiman, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile.

I perceiving they encountered one another so fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight; but they little regarded what I said: I did perceive the Lady piteously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-Priest, that seeketh by force to rob me of mine honor. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperors Bed & Country. With that I put spurs to my horse, & ran between them to separate them, which this Arch-Priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperour, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatness would have outswayed my truth, and so have brought my self unto an untimely death.

The Emperour having heard this tale, sighed, and at last fell into tears, in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-priest, relating his disloyalty in this manner: Althou false servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee honour, and exalt thee to high dignities, & hath thou requited all my love and trust with disloyalty & treasons: well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all men most unhappy; but it is not so much thy fault as my own, thy treason hath bewitched me: in an evil hour I gave credit to thy false speaking Tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The Arch-Priest hearing the Emperour thus distempered, began to intreat his Wights not to be so impatient, neither to give credit to his slanderous tale that the Merchant had commenced against him:

for

for (quod he) he belyeth me, and I am no way guilty of that wherewith he accuseth me: Thou lyest falsely (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thy self in what I have charged thee withal: and if thou stand still in the denial, I challenge thee by the single Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrel: and hereupon I throw down my Gage, and withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here spoken: and more than that, ere night shut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yield my self vanquished.

The Emperour fixing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand to the tryal of the combate, he said: Arch-Priest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this challenge, or to yield thy self guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The Arch-Priest replied on this manner: Mighty Emperour, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchants Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (quod the Emperour) in this case no excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yield your self a traytor to our Crown and Dignity. At these words the Arch-Priest was somewhat troubled in mind, yet at last he was fain to accept the Combate, because the Emperour charged him so deeply: & besides, he could have no excuse admitted. So the Emperour commanded them both to safe keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to B. Pepin of France: but in conclusion the Traytor had his desert, as hereafter followeth.

## C H A P. VIII.

How the Emperour by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combate fought between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant.

The day of the Combate being appointed and the field prepared, tidings came to the Emperour, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperour hearing thereof, by the grave counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring B. Pepin to Constantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witness of these contentions, & of the cause of this combate, which was to prove the Arch-Priest a traytor



for, and also to hold the Emperour excused in that he had by his false accusations banished his Emperess. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long travel, at last they came to Rome, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them: King Pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their several degrees; all which being done, the Ambassadors thus spake unto King Pepin, Great Lord, we present these Letters from Alexander your Brother, Emperor of Constantinople, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy Answer. King Pepin took the Letters graciously, and read them: And having thoroughly considered the Contents, with a loud voice, he said: My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tydings, and also of as great admiration. The Emperour Alexander greets me well, & sends me word that my Sister Bellisant his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully Banished, and that by reason of a false Arch-Priest unto whom he hath given too much trust: which Priest for these his treasnable Facts, is accused by a Merchant, and for trial of the truth of this his accusation, will put himself in jeopardy of life, by single combate in open field, body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the Day and place is ready for the trial of his fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into banishment: upon all which I bow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperour be found to have offered her this indignity, without just cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that war can thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords in presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with speed that every man should address himself to accompany him to Constantinople, to behold the manner of this Fight between the Merchant and the Arch-Priest.

The Day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way towards Constantinople, where after some few days of travel, he safely arrived. The Emperour hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach: The Emperour mounted on horse-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City to

to meet his Brother King Pepin. At last they met: but the Emperour overcome with Sorrow and Tears at the remembrance of Bellisant, could not utter a word. On the other side, Pepin being fiercely angered at what happened to his Sister, gave no respect unto the Emperours tears, but proudly began to gird him on this manner: Emperour (quoth he) leave off these your lamentations, and shake off these weeds of sorrow that you seem to wear for my Sister Bellisant! for he that hath a Harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour, and since my Sister hath proved such a one; let her go and take care of her self, she is not worthy of so much as one tear from such an Eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperour, speak not you evilly against your Sister, for I am now fully persuaded, that she is composed of all virtue and true honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country. I think you so now (quoth King Pepin) then are you worthy of a double shame, & you do betray unto the world your weakness, and what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traytor too, you would with such rigor proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame, & dishonour, being of the Blood Royal of France. The Emperour hearing the like to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this manner; Alas, my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon some milder saying, for to that intent have I sent for you, that your own eyes may be a witness of the truth. 'Tis true (quod King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you say, for you have delibered over my sister into the worlds infamy, and that more is, even to banishment; and (for ought I know) to death it self, for I know not whether ever I shall behold her face again, or not: fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden judgment against an innocent; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: for that once lost; whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed

esteemed of the honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation, & next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister: I make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the only cause of these false & unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entred Constantinople, where with great joy & gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperour would have had R. Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but he denied, & caused his Train to lodge within the City, & he himself also. When the Emperour caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for R. Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonour done unto his Sister, & that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the fairest, the most vertuous, and the chastest Lady in all the world, and that by injustice and treason she was banished.

## C H A P. IX.

How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing the Lady *Belissant*, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant.

**N**OW was the day appointed come for the Combat between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readyness, according to the Command of the Emperour. At last there came both the Combatants into the field, and presented themselves before the Emperour. Being both before the Emperour, his Attendants (Knights and others) and the Arch-Priest armed in a most sumptuous Armour of proof, all imbost with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it even dazzled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the List, appointed for that purpose: The Emperour beholding the Glorious shew that the Arch-Priest made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, and in the presence of the Assembly, dubbed him Knight. When commanded he that a most rich armor should be put upon him in the presence of R. Pepin: who during the time he was arming, promising unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-Priest, to advance him to great livings,

livings, and high authority. These two adversaries being now in readyness, and each having their Blazon about their necks, their horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battle: The Emperour gave strict charge unto all his Officers of arms to have a special eye unto the Arch-Priest, for fear lest he on the sudden should fly the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his sword girt to him: first entred the Lists, after whom entred such abundance of people, that they were numberless. Then after came the Arch-Priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lists, ready to charge one another; R. Pepin being there in person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him: My Friend, the Gods give thee victory against this false traitor: I vow unto thee here before this assembly (so I may but find out the truth of my Sister *Belissant*) notwithstanding the great advancement that the Emperour hath promised to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the best of my Kingdom; the Merchant gave the King great thanks, and said; Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this Trayterous Priest confess that he hath treacherously sought the Destruction of your Sister: then came a Herald, administering to them both an Oath, and so clearing the Lists, left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such violence together, that their spears were broken to their hands; then they began to set forward to another Course, charging each other with their Swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they redounded from their Armour to the ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Corsets, and left them as a prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priest seeing himself so stiffly matched, gave over the fight till towards the Evening, for such was the custom of the Country, that in any challenged combat either party might refuse to follow the fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing-time, so the combatant were yielded vanquished before sun-set, or else abide



abide the sentence of death, thinking thereby to weary out the Merch. which the Merchant perceiving, he prepared to receive the arch-priest contagiously when he encountered him; which not being long after, the merchant so redoubled his strokes, that he smote off one of his ears, & his steel Habergion, and with the violence of the same blow, the Merchants sword fell from his hand; which the Arch-Priest seeing, put spurs to his horse, and charged him with such violence, that he ran against the Merchants horse, and thrust out one of his eyes: the horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curbeting so furiously that he unhors'd his rider: and so hard was the fortune of the Merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung in the stirrup, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horse hurrying him along the field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable spectacle, & with the amazement thereof grew desperate in their hopes. R. Pepin also was so discouraged at this disastrous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his cheeks, uttering many silent ejaculations against the unkindness of fortune.

Now

Now that which was most miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Priest could not enforce his horse to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out to & fro, whereby he could not make a prey upon the Merch. as he thought to have done. But see, at the last the Merchants horse foundered and fell down, by which means the Merchant got his leg from forth the stirrup, and at last got up on his feet like a valiant & hardy Champion: the Arch-Priest perceiving the Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with strong violence upon him, and thereby lent him 5 or 6 blows upon his head & shoulders, that the poor Merchant was even astounded. At last he was forced to give back to recover breath, & in a very little space finding himself somewhat relieved, he subtly, & fiercely gave a fresh assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he struck with such violence, that the sword fell out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Priest, that the blood ran through his Armour upon the earth. This so vexed the Arch-Priest, that he grew mad with rage, and turned his horse upon the Merchant, minding to have over-run him with his horse. But the Merchant observing his drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long knife, punch'd it into the belly of the horse, so that the horse being thus wounded, began to sing and leap; inasmuch as the Arch-Priest was in danger to be unhors'd, and striving to save himself, he lost his shield. The Merchant espying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it, that done, he made again towards his horse, & smote him into the belly with his sword, so that both the horse and his rider came tumbling on the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhors'd, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground & leaping on him, pull'd off his helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head: The Arch-Priest seeing himself in such danger, said thus, Alas, my friend, I pray thee take pity on me, & give me leave to confess my self, for I yield my self vanquish'd. The Merch. hereat was very courteous, and granted him his desire: The priest had no soon got on his feet, but clasping the Merchant in his arms threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant: I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands

¶ 2

hands

hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ha! replied the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me: Tell it is so, that now I stand at thy mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee, therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life, I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperour and King Pepin, and there openly, in the hearing of all men, testifie that thou falsely hast accused me, and that thereby I may be cleared of those false accusations which by thy means have been brought upon me; all which if thou effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life, and besides, be a means unto the Emperour and his Brother, to buy thee Peace and forgiveness of this thy foul fact committed both against me and them also: Nay more, I swear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the order of Priesthood, to give thee a name of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee rich, fair, and of pleasant behaviour; and to conclude, thou shalt say more than ever any of thy kindred ever told, thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely death? The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the sudden exceeding sorrowful, & not without cause, but not knowing on the sudden what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be as mindful of your Oaths and Promises. In me, quoth the Arch-Priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forwards towards the Emperour, and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-Priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together: the Merchant had no sooner got on his feet, but he began again afresh to open all the treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his Teeth, and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the same service he had served him before, & suddenly he clasping the Arch-Priest in his arms, he threw him down, & having him at advantage, he said thus, Arch-Priest seeing you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confessions; for you shall confess to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himself beaten at his own weapons, began again to intreat, but the Merchant

Merchant not regarding his words, presently put out his eyes, and gave him so many deadly blows, that he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harm: then the Merchant called the Marshals of the field, and said; Lo, here you may see that I have done my best endeavour against the Arch-Priest, and if he be vanquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him to such a pass, that I may kill him outright if I please; therefore my request now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander, Emperour of Constantinople, and King Pepin of France, hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be ear witnesses of the confession which the Arch-priest shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged Combat against me.

The Marshals did according to the request of the Merchant, and then presently came Alexander the Emperour, with King Pepin, & all the Nobles, even to the place where the arch-priest lay, all sorrowful and fully vanquished. Then the Emperour demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-priest confessed, declaring the whole plot of his villainies, and how by his means the Lady Bellifant had been wrongfully banished. When the standers by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were shed on every side, but especially the Emperour, for his lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterness and hearty sorrow: Now if the Emperour were so sorrowful what may you think of King Pepin her Brother? Alas, it was not without great cause, when they saw and knew that by too much trust given to a treacherous Priest, they had lost the vertuous Lady Bellifant. Between these 2 great Princes there was great joy and great sorrow; joy to King Pepin that his Sister was found innocent and blameless; sorrow to the Emperour, that he should be the onely means (by false suggestions) of his Wives banishment.

At last, lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confessions of the Arch-Priests treasons, the Emperour consulted with his Counsel that the traitor should be put into a Caldron of hot burning Oyl, quick, and so finish his miserable days, as he had traiterously sought the life of that innocent Lady: So the Execution was suddenly to be done, and it being done, the assembly of people of all sorts was dismissed.

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging, but the Emperour sorrowful for what happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself at his feet, began thus to say: Alas, dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, & the residue of these great Nobles your attendants: Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly: what shall I say? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my self into your hand, & do to me whatsoever pleaseth you: and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining, for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of mine own affections. Take it I say, for I will no longer be served; but during the rest of my life, will become a servant to thee or any, for no better have I deserved. K. Pepin perceiving the Emperour so passionate, and so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground; and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world, to seek out the distressed Lady Bellifant, thus all things settled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperour, and so returned back again into his own Country.

## C H A P. X.

How King Pepin returned from Constantinople into France, and after failed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.

King Pepin having taken his leave of Constantinople (as you have heard) after a long journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleans, to refresh his long and tyred Spirits, tossed to and fro in melancholly and heavy cogitations, for the woful mischance befallen unto his Sister Bellifant. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at Orleans; the King was right joyful, that at the last he had attained the place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forests in the Realm of France. Being (as I said) come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his welcome home; which was accordingly performed,

In

In the midst of these Feastings and Rebellings, the Esquire that had the charge of the Orphan Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty on this manner: Dread Sovereign; Lo, here I present before you the poor Orphan that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Orleans, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at mine own Expence, Dread Sovereign, but your own. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to Mans Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please: The King having heard the words of the Esquire, called this Orphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and moved divers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphan Valentine be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love; I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, she is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the richest Gifts of Nature.

The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accomplished, insomuch that they were both under one Government, of one and the same Purse, and had one and the same Attendants: Yea, every way they joyed one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of Lamentation till they came together again; but especially the Kings Daughter; who so pondered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that she became in love with him; in much that his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and drave her melancholly and disturbed thoughts, into a thousand doubts and jealousies.

Now Valentine was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms, as Horse, Armour, Jousts and Turnaments; still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, and furnished him with Armour, Horse, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many



many secret mutterings, whereby many people fretted so sore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying: That when he was at the best, he was but a found, stray, poor, base, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle, nor noble stock, and suchlike: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down and weep: whose tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would, in a tender Woman-like affection, accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company.

At length when he saw tears little prebailed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bore himself like a Man, amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts and degrees, as well Nobles as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orson runs in the Forrest, all rough, and covered with hair, like a Bear, and leading the life of a beast; where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came into Orleance divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin understanding hereof by divers Letters received, addrested himself and his powers, to make his resistance against this common Enemy; And among the rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this Young Valentine a chief Commander. Fair Eglantine hearing that Valentine should make out, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly by stealth, sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her. And when he came, she sighing, said unto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now I am quite bereft of all my joy, for I perceive you will betake your self to a dangerous War: Gentle Love, leave me not so desolate, would to the Gods, that I had neither Father nor Friend in the world to contradict my Will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how well my affection stands by thy person: For if wishes might avail, I swear (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would joyn my self unto in the bands of Marriage; and then shouldst thou be the Li. of France, and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle imaginati-

ons,

ons; said, Madam, leave these womanish dotages, you know I am no person fitting your estate, I am but a found stray, that your Father hath caused long time to be nourished for charity sake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meanest Damozel attending your person, make your choice else where, & joyn Royal blood unto yours, & so with all duty I take my leave, & commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his speech, away he goes, leaving the poor Lady all heavy desolate, and in the midst of mourning.

By this the King and all his retinue were in a readiness to depart, and taking their way from Orleance towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forrest, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown to you, that in these Woods (as report goeth) there lieth a strange Monster, a Wild-man, much feared of Passengers, which spectacle of mans shape, I long to behold: before I venture out any further upon our intended Voyage to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the Chase was suddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chased divers sorts of wild beasts; and overcame them: but as for Orson the wild-man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save only his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed still the chase; hoping at last both to find and to fight with him also. Every way they begirt the Wood, some one way, some another: The King himself venturing so far, that he came before a Cave, dark and obscure, whereas the Wild-man used to hide himself. Orson perceiving the King, rushed out upon him, caught him within his Nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner, cast him on the ground. The King thus suddenly surprized by a savage man; never lookt for life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, which espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his Sword to have ran the Wild-man through, Orson perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King, and ran furiously upon the Knight, took him in his arms and overthrew him Horse and all. The Horse sore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forrest; but as for the Rider, (though a Lt. at Arms) Orson held him so fast with his Claws and Talons, that at last he pulled him in pieces, In the mean space the King escaped, and meeting part of his Company, re-

lated to them the great danger he had escaped, and the fearful Death of the Knight. These tydings much amazed the rest of the Company: yet being manfully resolved, they joynd themselves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead and torn to pieces, but Orson they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine: of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiving their labour lost, gave over the Chase, & set forward toward Rome. After this the King ranked his forces into battell-ray, and the great Ensign of France was given to one called Myllon Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren, Gervays and Sampson, had the whole command of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, King Pepin desired battell, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in, under the conquest of the Sarazens, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affairs; for the Admiral of the Sarazens had surprised the City, and put multitudes to the sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Friars, and all the Ecclesiastical persons, for to serve at their Heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils, after the custom of the Heathens. When King Pepin understood herof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: wherefore he addressed himself nearer unto the City, & there having assembled all his forces he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them; but taking better advise, he reserved himself and his Army for a season. What after befel, shall be delivered at large, when fit occasion serveth our purpose.

## C H A P. XI.

How King Pepin besieged Rome, and how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

King Pepin being thus come to Rome, besieged it, & after some few days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty men of War, and began to speak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the sword, and violently trodden under foot all such as withstood his power; Therefore, it is our Duties to comiserate their Estate that are thus overthrowen, and to try the fortune of a Battell against those Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carcasses as a Prey, as many have done before. Wherefore, I King Pepin, resting upon this resolution, would fain find out a man to bear unto the Pagan Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finished his speech, there was none amongst them made him any answer to his request. At length Valentine seeing all stand mute, stepped forth before the Emperour, and began to speak on this manner: Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admiral, and to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proof that I have done my message both with honour and advantage to your Majesty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, and of such undoubted and valiant resolution, was right Joyful; and all those of his Princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Whereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the same to Valentine. Valentine prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his Train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay. So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods



preserve the Noble and puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Sovereign : and Mahomet whom thou servest, save and defend thee redoubted Admiral. When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admiral rowzed him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him : Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King Pepin, will him either to renounce his Faith, and believe on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence than death : and so destroy him, together with all his lands and Kingdom : Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode, go, I say, reply not a word, for my heart is all enraged that so long I suffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprise, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such Message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, If that I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou shouldst never return to King Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot and furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid : Wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by pride or presumption I am come before you ; for when you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be astonished thereat. Why then (quoth the Admiral) say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprise. When said Valentine, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to King Pepin for a Coward ; and that since I came with him to this War, I would secretly have stolen away from the Camp, and returned back again into France : For which (great Admiral) the King had me in great disgrace, and bowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to lose both Life and Honour and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come unto your Court to desire you on King Pepins behalf, and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three Spears with you in single Combate, to try your valiancy, and to win unto my self that lost Honour that before I told unto you : Wherefore my request is, that your

Great

Greatness would grant me my request, otherwise I dare never return again, lest the King put me to death. The Admiral hearing this pittiful, yet cunning tale of Valentine, said unto him : Son I do swear by Mahomet, thou shalt not be refused ; but at this instant I offer thee the Juffs, and to the end that those Frenchmen that lye in siege before the City may have a sight thereof, and see thy valour, I will ordain the place of Jussing to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his Acceptance and feigned Love, he fell down and kissed the feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew into great favour in the Admirals Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he could never understand who were his Parents. But while he bestowed his wandring thoughts hereabout, the Admiral said thus unto him : Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive and sad. Is true (quoth he) and not without cause, for I am much afraid that I shall be slain in these Juffs, wherefore my request is, that I may have a Confessor to give me Absolution for my sins, then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought unto him : The Priest being come, said unto Valentine ; Now confess you unto me ; Valentine getting the Priest aside, and being together, he said thus unto him : Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and above all other, you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great secrecy. Thus it is, You know that this day I am to juss with the Heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy of Christian People : Now I am well assured that a great number of the Sarazens will issue forth of the City, to be eye-witnesses of these Juffs, to be held without the walls of the City. Wherefore you shall give warning to all Christians to keep within the Walls, arming themselves in a readiness, and closely keep it from the ears of the Pagans : so when the Pagans are come forth to behold the Juffs, the Christians suddenly shall surprize the Guards that keeps the Gates, and if any Mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a Messenger to King Pepin of what is done, that he with his Army may come unto them that are without, while those within are set on by the armed Christians, so begirting them on every side, that in the end we may make such a slaughter of them, that the Christians may receive both their City in peace, and their former liberty

liberty. So having ended his speech the Priest departed: When the Admiral commanded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his named Salatas, commanding him to see Valentine as well armed at all points as himself, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his Stable. Salatas having received this Command from his Uncle the Admiral, took Valentine and led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armors, willing him to make choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armour wherewith he would be armed, and making himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the outer Court, whereas he was attended with his horse, ready to put his foot into the stirrop. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his horse, the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed out of his privy Pallace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the Chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that side King Pepin had laid his Siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Hart waving in a field of silver, and on one side of the Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same arms King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entered the Lists, great was the clamour of the French in joy of Valentine; the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth out of the City to behold these Triumphant Jests, The Fryer having plaid his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addressed themselves to take possession of the Gates, which having gotten, there was no entrance again to be expected, King-Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of war ready to relieve Valentine, if necessity required. Having now all things in readines, the hour was at hand that the Jests should begin.

So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly Couched their Spears, the first course proved so valiant, that their Spears



Spears shivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving valour to brandish on the top of his helm, made out a second course, where Valentine got the better; for with his Spear (charged against the breast of the Admiral) he gave him such a strong blow, that he forced his spear quite through his body: insomuch that he fell from his horse stark dead, making a pitiful noise at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran suddenly upon Valentine, and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a resolute courage put spurs to his horse, and with his Sword drawn violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them, as he passed through them. King Pepin also with his Host came up to the aid of Valentine, but he was so hard beset by the Pagans, that he was smitten from off his horse, which Valentine spying came up to the rescue of the King, so that he horsed him again.

The King perceiving himself delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and said: My Child, thou hast saved my life, which is the

the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battel grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King Pepin on the Walls. The Pagans seeing King Pepins Colours displayed upon the Walls, betook themselves to flight: in chase of them the Christians followed on so fast; that they shamefully ended their days. In this Battel were slain a thousand Pagans only by the means of Valentine, who bare himself so valiantly that day, that he was the Death of many of the Pagans. And thus by his Prowess the City was again restored to the Christians, for which deed there was great Triumph in all Christendom, but especially at Rome: So that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlasting praise to Pepin King of France, and by the general applause of the people he was created Emperor, and Crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, administering Justice to all. And this hapned in the time of Pope Clement the Fourth.

## C H A P. XII.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the Love the King did shew towards *Valentine*.

**K**ing Pepin having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleans; and being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by Bertha his Queen, with her little Son Charlemain, and her fair Daughter Eglantine, and their joy appeared so much the more, for that Valentine whom she loved so dearly, was again returned home in safety: Being some few days rested from his weary labours, the Lady sends for Valentine, who accordingly came unto her, and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: Valentine, you above all the rest, are most welcome; and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumphs, and report says, you were the only Champion that drove the Pagans out of Rome. Valentine replied; Madam, I can by no man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for my self, I have done little deserving praise, but it hath pleased the King your

Father

Father to do me great honour, even so much, as all the days of my life I am not able to make the least part of recompence: and as he spake these words *Haufray* and *Henry*, (two men composed of all envy) entred the Chamber of Eglantine; and seeing him, began thus to speak: Valentine, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister? it is no place for such straglers as you are; this your boldness is not to be borne: no man knows of whom you are, therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again least you dearly buy these your presumptions: Valentine hearing these words, answered, Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister, to her dishonour. What though I be poor, and not know of whence I am, yet I am not so base as to offer violence unto one descended from the blood of Kings: And further, I promise and vow never to come near her Chamber again; and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very pensive all alone.

Valentine hastned to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in presence *Haufray* and *Henry*, and the Duke Myllain Daugler, who likewise waited upon the King during Dinner-time. Dinner being finished, the King arose and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles thus began to say: My Lords, here is Valentine, that hath well deserved at our hands, and that saved my life when I was in danger; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of Clerimont of Avergne, and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, saying, That he had heaped upon him more Honours than he could any way deserve. *Haufray* and *Henry* hearing these words, grew greatly male-content, and at last *Henry* began to talk with his Brother on this manner: This fount fellow I perceive grows in great favour with the King, and there must be some course taken to cross his designs, or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it; for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be set beside the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this Valentine will support and uphold him against us, Therefore Brother, I think it good to frame some Plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King.

and

and so far to prosecute your revenge against him, that if it be possible we will not only work his downfall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his speech, Haufray replied, Let it be as thou hast said, and that we may entrap his life, this shall be our plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Upstart hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in Bed with her, which when the King heareth, will certainly put him to death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine; while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty, insonmuch that the Kings love daily increased toward him, and above all other most desired his company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orson his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forrest, so much feared of all men, that none durst approach nigh the Wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from every side, and amongst the rest it chanced on a day, that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make complaint against a Wild-man in the Woods, for one day, as I and my Wife passed through the Forrest, carrying Bread and other Victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit, and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawless lust. The King hearing out the poor mans tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill fortune, and thereupon asked the poor man this question: Whether grieved him most, either the taking away of his Victuals, or his Wife: By my faith, said the poor man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said (quoth the King:) therefore I command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee for the loss of thy Victuals; but as for thy Wife, thou must bare the burden thereof thy self.

After this the King caused all his Barons to assemble, and take some order to take this Orson, all which they did, and hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive or dead, should have a thousand Marks for his reward. Whereupon assembled many worthy Knights to take this task in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating

ting who should be appointed to this business, Haufray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high Dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister Eglantine: He was fitted to set forward to try his valour, and let him be employed to fetch in this wild-man, that is such a terror to the Inhabitants: and with his valour he can vanquish him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his desired wish. The King hearing these words of his Son; said, away, for thy speech savoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low Birth, and found in a Forrest, yet I find him to me true and trusty, and of Gentle carriage, and to me seemeth to be born of more Noble Parentage than thou art: leave off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him; for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of more Noble Lineage, than as yet to us appeareth. And for my part (for the divers virtues that daily are seen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonour can be offered out of a branch of such a generous Spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was so displeased in heart, but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembled his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: Haufray, without any cause given on my part, ye have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and so your revenge be accomplished upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King I take a solemn Oath that I will take the enterprise upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead carcass as a witness in the open Field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as also bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an infant in the Wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plung'd himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing

curſing them, for that they were the cauſe of this dangerous enterprize: for he loved Valentine more than any, and at laſt called unto Valentine, and ſaid, My Child, adviſe you well what you undertake, for to fight with the Wild-man, is deſperation it ſelf, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men, and worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewiſe of valiant account that have forſaken this Combat. Wherefore I ſay, let not the evil words of a few malicious men make you deſperate in loſing your life. For my Child, it is far better to indure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) than to hazard ones life againſt ſuch a Monster, and no man.

Valentine replied, Warden me (my Liege) for I will never reboke my intended purpoſe: They call me ſound What, which grieveſt my very ſoul; for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I reſt determined and ſo take my leave, for to morrow morning will I ſet forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not, though the fair Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what had happened: but the next morning by break of day, ſhe called one of her Maidens, and ſaid, Go unto Valentine, and bid him come and ſpeak with me beſore his departure, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would ſain take my leave of him. The Damoſel did as the Lady commanded, and when ſhe came to Valentine, ſhe found him mounted on horſe-back, and ſhe did her meſſage unto him. He underſtanding her Errand, ſaid unto her, Damoſel, I know the love to be great between my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wiſh her to deſire that would turn to her diſhonour. But envy is of ſo great power, that it never leaves them whom it once poſſeſſeth. For certain it is, that Haufray and Henry (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious hearts, and will purſue me, even unto Death (if it be poſſible) wherefore fair Damoſel, bear her this answer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof, and further, that ſhe hold me in excuſe that I reſuſe to come; and ſo farewel.

C H A P.

## C H A P. XIII.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orſon in the Forreſt of Orleans.

NOW is Valentine upon his journey to the Forreſt, accompanied only with his Page: whither being come, he put his Helmet on his Head, and ſent him back again. So he rode forth all that day, ſeeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him: ſo the Night drawing on, he deſcended from his Horſe, and tyed him up to a Tree: having ſo done, he reſreſhed his body with ſuch Victuals as he had brought with him; and when he had eaten, and the day ſhut in, Valentine for fear beſook himſelf to the top of a Tree, and there abode all that night. In the Morning as ſoon as day appeared, he looked round about, and at laſt eſpied his brother Orſon running through the Forreſt. At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his Horſe, the Wild-man much wondering at the beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouse up the Courage of the Horſe, for he had never ſeen the like. The Horſe ſeeing the Wild-mans nails ſcratching his ſide, began to ſting and kick exceedingly. Valentine ſitting on the top of a Tree, noted the terrible ſhape of the Wild-man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their aid againſt this Monster. Orſon all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding the Horſe; and ſtill offered him ſuch injury with his Nails, that the Horſe did nothing but kick and bite him. When Orſon perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught faſt hold on him, and thought to have overthron him, as though he would have fought with him. Valentine perceiving his Horſe in danger to be ſlain, he cryed out aloud, and ſaid, Wild-man, leave my Horſe, and ſtay but till I come down, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a ſtrange voice, looked up into the tree, and eſpying there a man, made unto him divers ſigns with his hands and head to come down, and he would pull him in pieces. Valentine making all the haſte he could, drew his Sword and leapt upon the ground cloſe by the Wild-man; when Orſon ſaw the Sword, and that he offered to ſmite him therewith, he leaped back, and kept himſelf from the ſtroak, but ſuddenly returned again upon



upon Valentine, and threwo him unto the ground. Herewithal Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present Death in the place, for he felt the strength of the wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both groveling on the ground, Valentine assaid divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw that by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed knife, and smote Orson deep into one of his sides, that the blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himself wounded, all enraged, he gave such a screech, that the Woods echoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threwo him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the Shield from about the neck of Valentine, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours therein emblazed: when he had looked his fill, he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to Valentine, with the violence of his Nails and Teeth, he brake in pieces both the Ribs of his Armour, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his Nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himself so sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recov'ling back, step'd unto a Tree hard by, the which tree he pulled up by the roots and made thereof a Club; being thus prepared, he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee; Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their fortunes. Orson was so cruel, and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his Sword, for he was so afraid thereof by reason he had received a wound before by a knife: Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint. In which time both standing gazing on each other, Valentine looked wisely upon Orson, and said thus: Wild-man, wherefore dost thou not yield thy self unto me? Here thou livest like a beast,

beast, having no knowledge of humane Society, come thy way with me, and I shall make thee know thy self and others, I will give unto thee food of all sorts, and also cloath thee in Apparel fitting humane shape.

Orson understanding by signs he would his good, fell down upon his knees, and stretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making signs unto him to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his command ever after, and with further signs promised, that during his life he would assist him both in body and Goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which so many knights durst not meddle withal: for by this only he had won himself more honour than any knight that lived in France in those days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orson by the hand, and shewed him by signs, that he should go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind, and being out of the Wood, Valentine took off one of his Girts, and bound both of his hands fast unto his body, that he should not attempt again to do him any hurt; and in this manner being bound, he mounted on Horse-back, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beast, who never resisted, which was a thing most of all to be wondered at.

#### CHAP. XIV.

How Valentine having conquered Orson the wild-man, departed from the Forrest towards Orleans, wherein King Pepin was resident.

Valentine having conquered the Wild-man (as ye have heard) took his way towards Orleans, but you must imagine he could not reach there in one day, wherefore the day being spent, he determined to lodge at the next Town or Village: being come thither, he thought there to take rest that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his House, shutting up their doors, and for very fear durst not offer once to look out on him: Valentine perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them, saying, Open your doors every man, and fear not, for we come only for lodging; yet for all this, they would not give him succour: At last seeing neither intreaty nor threatnings would prevail,

dail, he swore most bitterly that if they would not receive him into their Houses, to rest there that night, he would let loose the Wild-man amongst them; still he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At last, as he had threatened, so he did, and letting loose the Wild-man, he made him signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did, and bringing a Pest from out of the Earth, he therewithal flung them open with such violence, that they fell off the hooks upon the ground. Valentine seeing the Gate opened in this manner, entered the House, and the Wild-man with him: But when they within saw the Gate broken down, they all forsook the House, and ran out at the back door, leaving all to Valentine and his Beastly Guest. Valentine perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up his Horse, and dressed him, and Orson in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capens and divers other provisions of flesh upon a Spit roasting at the Fire. Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should turn the Spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his horny talons upon the meat, and tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf: when he had torn the Meat in pieces, he espied a Caldron of water standing by, into which he put his head like a Horse, and drank water unmeasurably. Valentine perceiving him to be a thirst, made signs unto him, that he should forsake the water, and he would give him Wine, and therewithal took a Pot, and led him into the Keller: when Valentine had drawn the Pot full of Wine, he gave it unto Orson, who set it unto his mouth, and taking the Liquor, found it to be very good. Drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the Wine, and afterward threw the Pot against the ground, making a sign unto Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his signs, and filled him the Pot again, but Orson espying before his sight a little Bowl dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to Valentine's Horse, but Valentine perceiving that, made signs unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but water, yet Orson shewed again by signs, that Wine was a great deal better than Water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we will pass over, for the night was so far spent, that rest were fitter for them than Meat. Valentine halfed him to Supper, making Orson to bear him company (after his kind)

kind) but Orson drank so freely of the Wine that Valentine gave him that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell fast asleep. Valentine seeing what had happened, said: Now do I perceive that there is neither any strength, nor resistance in this wild-man, for if I would I could suddenly here end his days: But in regard he would make a further trial of him, he punched against him with his foot so hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made signs unto him, that there was People about the house: with that Orson suddenly rose as in a trance, and catching up a great log within the Chimney, he ran against the Gate of the House, that he made all shake again; at which sudden action, Valentine fell into a great Laughter, which Orson perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to his rest again. Valentine made unto him another sign, that he should fear nothing, for he would be his Watch-man, but Orson would not sleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as he before had promised unto Orson, and watched all that night, fearing the Inhabitants, lest that they should grow into an uprore, for they were so greatly possessed with fear, that they forsook their Houses, and ran every one to the Church, and all that night so tumbled the Walls backward, that ere the Morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War.

Now the morning being come, Valentine betook him to his Horse, leading Orson bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleans, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every man into his house, shutting their doors, and getting up into their higher Rooms, gazing out of their Windows. Being entered the City, tidings came to K. Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly astonished, and at last said: Valentine, my Child, in a happy hour wast thou born, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood, for now I see thou art fortunate, and by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleans, till he came at the Palace Gate of the King, and when the Porter saw Orson, they shut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice said unto them, Fear not, but go tell the K. that I will shield him and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have



have him forame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine said, who commanded they should enter the Palace. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand, and led him into the Court. When Bertha and the fair Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear, Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King Pepin sat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Amongst the rest stood Haufrey and Henry, who also made great shew of love, but in heart wished the Wild-man had been his death. King Pepin, and the rest of the Lords gazed on the Wild-man, insomuch as the King said, he is made of a proper mold, fair of stature, and though now he seem rough, yet if he were clothed, he would become the shape of a right worthy Knight. Then Valentine said my Liege, it were requisite he were baptized. It pleaseth me well (said the King) let it be done. So the Priest was appointed to baptize him: these were his

his God-fathers, King Pepin and D. Millain: Valentine, and the Dutchess of Bourbon; So they called his name Orson: the Baptism being solemnized, the King sat him down to dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup: then Orson was commanded into the Hall to see his behabour, and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. Orson seeing the Meat, took as much as he could grasp in his hand, and devoured it. Having eaten that, he espied one of the Attendants who brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him, snatched away the Peacock, and sat him down and devoured it most greedily. Valentine seeing his behabour, made signs unto him that he did not well, whereat Orson seemed ashamed, but the King bad let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeness. Orson having devoured much meat, got a pot of Wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber, and a Bed for Orson in the same, but as soon as ever he entered the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and so fell asleep.

## C H A P. XV.

How Haufrey and Henry took Counsel together to Murther Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine.

Right glad and joyful was the fair Lady Eglantine that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man, insomuch that she sent him word to bring the Wild-man into her presence. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand, and led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where were assembled divers Ladies of Honour to behold him: Orson being in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt upon the bed, there making diverse signs unto the Ladies, which pleased them, but his meaning they could not understand, at which they were right sorry. At last Valentine opened to them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiss and play with some of them, whereat they looked one upon another and began to laugh. While this assembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufray came to Henry and said thus unto him: Brother, you see how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling encrease, which much eclipseth our Honour, and we must seek some remedy for it. It is true (said Henry) wherefore let us lay some Plot to cut him off.

Then said Henry, hearken what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her Chamber: when we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her bed. Accordingly to their determination, they put it into action, and rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As soon as Haufrey was entered, he roughly thus began with Valentine. Disloyal man, now shalt thou know the price of thy inconstancy, purchasing daily great dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our Sister Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by thee she is made unfortunate. But sith the King hath been told her of, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take Vengeance of thee in our own Persons. And Haufrey lift up his fist, and calling him Traytor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out of his mouth. Henry on the other side came to him, and with a Glave thought to have smitten Valentine to the earth. Orson perceiving they were in earnest, leapt out, and gave Haufrey such a Groak with his rough hand, that he felled him, and after ran to Henry, and girded him so between his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

This caused an Outcry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamour, but when they understood that Orson had dealt so violently with the Kings Sons, they would have killed him with their Swords. Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his Sword, and swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow, this said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he rested himself for that time; Haufrey and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild-man, saying, Father in an ill hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow; and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person: The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer; that as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before the

the King, began to say on this manner: Dread Sovereign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine; accompanied with divers other Ladies that desired to see Orson; I know not how, nor why your two Sons Haufrey and Henry violently entered the Chamber, charging me that I had abused the Body of your fair Daughter: Moreover, in the heat of their violence used against me, Haufrey smote me on the face, that the blood issued; and Henry lifting up his Sword, thought to have taken away my life: All which when Orson saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the earth and therewithal began this uproar. The King hearing this tale, said, and is this true that you have said? Upon my life (said Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, Orson hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufrey and Henry, I see right well that you are even swollen full of malice against Valentine; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no ill against him, for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many tryals of his love and faithfulness toward me: and with this answer Haufrey and Henry departed, although sorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, Valentine stayed still in the Kings Hall amongst the other Nobles that were there assembled, and Orson went here and there round about the Palace, at last he came unto the Kitchen where the Cooks were making ready supper, and being there, he espied two Capons ready for the fire, Orson made towards the Capons, and set upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Pestle lying by him, and gave Orson such a blow, that he made him bow therewith; Orson feeling the blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the Legs, throwing him down upon the ground, and being down, he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to death. Things was brought unto the King, that Orson had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him.

The King hearing heretofore, willed him to be brought before him, and made signs unto him that he should be hanged; But Orson fetched the Pestle, and made signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith, wherefore the King commanded that none should offer him

him any injury. So after that, Valentine taught him manners, how he should behave himself; and so they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.

### • C H A P. XVI.

How Duke Savary sent unto K. Pepin for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.

**I**T chanced that not long after that coming home of Valentine and Orson into the Court of K. Pepin, the Duke Savary sent certain Messengers unto K. Pepin, which said to him on this manner. Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your Aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath besieged his Confiner, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of Arms against his Will, notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three Sons can make against him. The King having heard this Message, made this answer: We agree to give him all the aid we can. We had no sooner given answer unto the Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, said thus unto him, Renowned King, assemble your men of War in readiness, and conduct them towards Lyons, for the Almaines are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above an hundred thousand fighting men. The King hearing this sudden news, was much troubled in mind; and presently called before him the Arch-Bishop of Rhemes, the Duke Myllon Daugler, Garvas, and Sampson, these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal, craved their counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to Aquitaine to succor Duke Savary, or to Lyons to resist the Almaines: Whereunto Myllon Daugler made this answer: The Duke, I confess, deserbeth to be succoured, but yet in two extremes, let us chuse the less: Therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present danger, and for the Duke, he must be content to take our present affairs for answer: So generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With

With these words, the Messenger that came from the Duke Savary departed, and carried these tidings with him to Aquitaine, which made him very sorrowful to hear it, because the Green Knight had very strongly assailed him. Now here gentle Reader, I let you understand, for the better ordering your proceedings, that this Green Knight here spoken of, was Brother to Ferragus, the Giant that kept the Lady Bellissant in his Castle, who was the distressed Mother of these two Infants born in the Wood, called Valentine and Orson, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all, of what condition soever, should be ready armed against the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the Green Knight, and fight with him in the Field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both Armies met, as well Horse as Foot, the Pagans presented themselves in multitudes, and the Green Knight behaved himself so valiantly, that at the first encounter, with his Battell-ax at two blows he slew two valiant Knights Duke Savary perceiving him to be so valiant a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting they assailed each other; but the Duke was ill-advised to venture his Body against the Green Knight, because it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be overcome of any, except he were a Kings Son, and such a one as had never sucked the Breasts of any Woman. But the Green Knight was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such man should be upon the face of the Earth; but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you shall understand. Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured so far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; for he was round begirt with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken Prisoner, and brought back unto the Green Knight, whose Ransome could not be granted for any Gold or Treasure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke surprised; returned unto Aquitaine, sore lamenting the loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, Girin the elder, Anselme and Garin the younger, made great moan to see the hard hap of their Father, led captive among the Pagans.

The sons having shewed their sorrows, in comes Fezon his daughter with



with this lamenting out-cry: Alas, in an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distemper'd soul than all the rest, which is this, that my Father should be held Captive in the hands of his enemies, the only way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the Grave. Alas (dear Father) your Love to me is the only cause of all these disastrous chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, inasmuch, as with this extremity of sorrow, she had well nigh finished her days, had not the rest of the Ladies attending, laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow, wherewith she was almost overcome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green Knight triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavilion, and having him there, began to revile him in this disdainful manner: Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy life; this that I speak thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips: either give me thy Daughter Fezon to Wife, and so redeem thy life, or else I will have her against thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there Royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud menaces began thus to reply: proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be Baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replied: Urge me not further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet; therefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my demand, I will first make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterwards consume all Aquitaine to ashes, and after that, put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power than thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began wisely to set his eye upon him, and marking his unwonted lamentations, began afresh with him on this manner: Brave Duke, leave off these thy sad laments, and hearken unto my relation and resolution also, and that it is: I am not ashamed to let you understand, that thy Daughters beauty hath

hath enthralled me, and therefore I will retal my threatned sentence of death against thee; out of which captivate affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to this condition, that thou shalt find out a Knight within the space of six months, to encounter me; and if it so happen, that by strength of arms he conquer me, I vow by all the Heavens, to send thee back again into thy own Country, without wasting any of the same: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy fair Daughter into my hand, to be my lawful wife. These Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

These Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave leave that Duke Savary should depart, upon Conditions, that he should swear to keep Covenants, not only for the present, but during his life. The Duke being thus delibered, made his repair to Aquitaine, whither being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those conditions, whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his said Daughter: and withal, the Truce taken for the space of six months. His Counsellors hearing what was past, advised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these advertisements following: If there were any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the Green Knight for the love of the beautiful Lady Fezon, he should lay down his Gage and so be answered. These Letters were sent into 12 Christian Lands; what followed, you may better learn by the succeeding Chapter.

## CHAP. XVII.

How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitaine*, at a solemn Just there holden to bear away the Love of the beautiful Lady Fezon.

During this time of the Truce, between Duke Savary and the Green Knight, Pepin Knight of France, had taken his Journey against his Enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Host of men, being come before the City with all his Forces, he set upon a Knight called Lamparris, who had also brought into the Field 10000 fighting men. This Lamparris was King of Syres, Holland, and Frizeland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which stood a very strong

strong defended City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begirt the City with a siege, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer famishment; but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Guy, Marshal of France. The wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France: with all his warlike Soldiers. Being arrived at Paris, it was told him the Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing heartily, said in the presence of his Barons: Who is he amongst you that would win fair Fezon for his love, must take upon him a Combat against the Green Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one half of his Possessions: and that this is true, behold Letters written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights right diligently viewed these letters, yet none of them durst undertake the enterprise, save only Valentine, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right dear Sovereign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that Green Knight, and will gladly undertake the task committed. Again, I have a great desire to leave France, for I long to take in hand some tedious Journey, to find out the Mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my power to make thee greater than any man within my Court, and for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitain, I freely give thee leave, but on condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Manhood with the Green Knight thou return again, if thou escape with life: Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking leave, he shortly after prepared to his Journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go to Aquitain, she was very sorrowful, and at last in the midst of tears, sent for Valentine to come unto her. Valentine promised the messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed, and being come, she burst forth in tears, saying, Ah Valentine, now I do well perceive that all my joys are at an end, and that you are resolved to leave this Country of France. Ah! would to God it might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man living, whom I hold so dear as you, & were not

not I curbed by my high birth, I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayest the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keys of all my treasure, and take what pleaseth thee, for there is great store; and the Gods give thee succour, in all thy knightly Enterprises.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold I need none, but that which most of all distempereth my unquiet breath, is, That I cannot learn of my descent. Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which, That I bear upon one of my shoulders a Cross, and it is of the colour of most pure Gold, of which sign I know not what to gather, but resolve thus, never to rest in any place, until such time as I have found out the truth of my Patibity: and so lovely Lady, I take my leave, earnestly requesting you to stop the current of these winnish tears, and withal, I bow, That if I find my Birth answerable to the Majesty from whence you are descended, to take you as my only choice to wife, forsaking all other. On the other side, having found out my birth; and perceiving it not answerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the wealth in the world: For malicious tongues in time to come will say, where are the Brethren, Sisters or Cozens of this runagabe, that hath presumed to match himself unto the daughter of our mighty King Pepin: having spoken all these words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of grief. But when she had some little time sat still, she could not be satisfied, but offered to follow him whithersoever he went; and in conclusion, brought him some part of his way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufrey and Henry were right glad thereof, privily conspiring how to bring it to pass, that Valentine and his Brother Orson (who went along with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely death.

## C·H·A·P· XVIII.

How Haufrey and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.

Valentine and Orson having taken their leave of K. Pepin, addressed themselves for Aquitain. Being on their way Haufrey and Henry consulted together (forming to their Aid a Third who

who was Cozen to them both) how they might lye in Ambush to set upon Valentine and Orson, to work their destruction: which number was about thirty strong able men. This Plot being thus come to perfection, charge was given to these warlike men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Brother Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed where this should be done, was a very large & great Forrest, through which Valentine must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it so chanced that Valentine came riding along the Forrest with Orson running by his side, swifter than a Horse, who coming near the place where these armed men lay, forth steps their Captain (called Grygar) accompanied with all his troop, with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized Valentine on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce traytor lent him such a mo-  
 val uttered



tal blow, that his sword pierced quite through his Armour, & entred into the flesh, in so much as the blood, followed the blow, and withal

uttered forth these unwelcome words, Valentine, either yield thy self captive, or receive thy death. Valentine, as a man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the sight of his own blood, and considering how he was encompass'd with a multitude of his enemies recommending his innocency unto the Gods, at last spoke on this manner: My Lord (speaking to Haufrey and Henry) I see well that you have determined my days by Treason and without cause on my part given, but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your hands, or before this day Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your Valour. And therewithal drew forth his sword, and gave the first that encountred him such a blow upon the head, that he labe it even to the Teeth, and there he lay dead: After that he betook him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroke one fell before him.

Orson perceiving his brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himself, & with his rough hands & piercing talons, he rent & tore all that came in his way, and so hit them with his teeth that they fell groveling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seeing his Brother Orson thus bestir himself, held up his bloody sword, defending himself, and offending his enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight; Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pitifully killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. Valentine, yet I with thee yield, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these insulting words, made towards Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner assailed him; but being too forward, he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orson with their long spears. Being thus begirt with enemies, he still behaved himself so valiantly that none durst lay hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away with strong hands. Orson perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous noise, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter than he could run, and having at last lost the sight of them,

knele

knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain commanded them to follow after Orson, and to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-run them, and so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that in his grief, he burst out into these speeches: Alas, now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction. Farewel Noble M. Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all vexeth me, is, that they never shall understand the truth of my death, for the very stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my breath; farewell Orson too, for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother: Farewel my dear Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for I now must dye without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark Pit, whilst his Enemies determined what shall be done to him; some were of opinion to put him to death, others that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment: But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in Prison till Haufray and Henry have received knowledge of all their Proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry, who entertained them Royally; being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was laid to rest within the Wood, lying down at the foot of a Tree: the Morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris. Also, never resting till he came into the Presence of King Pepin: being come thither, by signs and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of Valentine, but yet for all the haste he made, Grygar arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their comfort was, he

could

could not speak, thinking thereby for to escape from mistrust and suspicion, but their hopes were all laid in the Dust, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the two Brethren had appointed that Grygar should return in all haste to the Castle to put Valentine to death, thereby thinking all their Treasons might pass undiscovered: But see how it come about, that all their counsels were quite overthrowen: for Orson (as before is said) came unto the Kings Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every man took his place. The King being set, and casting his eyes about, suddenly espied Orson, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orson ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noise, and knocking his Breast in most hideous and fearful manner, which made the King into ten thousand fears, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable spectacle. Orson ran again along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every man, and making many fearful signs: Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the tray for Grygar, who spying Orson hung his head in his bosom: Orson having once got the sight of him, ran furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroke, that he smote off one of his Ears: after he began to lay upon his face, insomuch that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth: Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for help, but Orson hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such another stroke, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing Tables, Seats, and all that stood before him, which made all the beholders into admiration: and had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider in to what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this madman: and either let him dye for this presumptuous rage, or no man shall be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, was wroth against him: Being thus wroth, he said, as we find it, so we will question the cause of this fact. Orson was then there, and brought



before the King, and he demanded how he durst presume to far into the Presence of his Majesty? Orson presently answered by signs, how that he had slain Valentine in the Forrest, and that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane traitor Grygar, and withal closed his fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. The Pepin perceiving by his actions, the cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this Wild-man hath challenged Grygar to fight with him, therefore tell me your Opinions what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye therein, and for my part I could willingly give consent that it should be tryed forth by combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the Verdict that the K. had passed. So the battel was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without cause; for he foresaw hereby, that his treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill-favour'd eye on Haufray: Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said: Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee, however it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never to reveal the fact: yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful death for your sake: Having thus said, he left Henry, and returned unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task, the reason chiefly moving me, is, that inasmuch that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honour, but a Wild Savage to encounter with man, & no Knight: I think I may safely (so your Grace be pleased) refuse the Combat. Nay (quod the King) no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my advise, but also by the counsel of all my Barons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that treason long lying hid, might come to light: Grygar hearing it thus concluded

ded on, grew more into despair: but Haufray being there present, comforted him again in this manner: Doubt not, for you have equity on your part; and besides I will see you well armed in all points; sitting your knightly race.

When Orson gathered by his wonted signs, that he should fight with this Traitor, he was right glad, and withal, made shew unto the K. that Valentine was dead, whereat the K. grew wondrous sad, and said would Orson have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the K. commanded him to be taken away: making signs unto him, that he should strike no more, till the time they could meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the K. called unto Grygar, to make haste to arm himself; Grygar loath to venture his life upon so uncertain ground, began once again to speak unto the K. saying; Most dread Sovereign, I have been a long servitor about your person, both in war and peace, but you reward me not accordingly, inasmuch as you compel me to fight against a Man that hath neither sense, reason, nor in truth, humane shape: Grygar (said the K.) if the truth be on your side, you need not fear, for you shall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orson he shall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you shall be well mounted on Horse-back, he on foot, nor shall he beat any weapon. The right, you say, is on your side, wherefore maintain that right, and shew your valour, for the sentence of Combat may not be recalled.

## C H A P. XIX.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.

The place of Combat being appointed, Orson attended in a readiness for his enemy; in the end, Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wise: My Lord, in your cause am I delivered over to death, but was the day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy peace (said Henry) for I will defend thee from the sentence of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret.

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his Horse, went towards the Palace gate, where this Combat was to be effected: the hour



hour being come, the *K.* repaired to the Window to behold the Combat: All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong might be offered on either part. So Grygar being entered the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying:

Willain, thou hast offered me great wrong, in putting out one of my eyes, but e're I part, I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the *K.* Orson perceiving whereunto his proud speeches tended, shewed him his Dails, gnashing his Teeth together at him: whereas Grygar suddenly Couched his Spear within his Kell, and ran upon him: Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, and ran his Spear fast into the ground; Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returning back again, seized the Spear in to his own hand, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a stroke therewith, that he almost dyed. Grygar feeling the fury of his stroke, set spurs to his Horse, & rid like a mad man about the field: Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs to the *K.* that he would e're long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah Haufray for thy cause and sake I am thus delivered over to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the wild-man.

At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider to the Earth, and with the fall he lost his Shields: Orson espying the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back, after he came unto Grygars Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the field, and making ill-favoured signs and tokens; insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dismayed. Amongst the rest, the *K.* himself appeared very sorrowful, and at last began thus to speak: O my Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this fight will grow; but it is my opinion, that there is treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the field on Horse back after his enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountered Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him

such

such a blow that he smote him to the earth: afterward he leaped upon him, and disarmed him of his weapons; then the next blow he struck, he smote off one of his arms: next on the body he gave him such a wound, that it cut him even to the reins of the back. Grygar having received all these wounds, cryed out most piteously, insomuch that every one requested he might have a Priest to Confess him of his sins. The Ward that was appointed for the field, hearing these out-cryes, sent out a worthy *Kt.* to demand what he would have done; Unto whom Grygar said; Sir, bring me before the *K.* Majesty, and before him and the rest of this assembly I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from point to point actually.

## C H A P. XX.

How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to *K. Pepin*; and how *Haufray* and *Henry*, had been onely Plotters thereof against the worthy *Valentine*.

At last Grygar was brought before the *K.* who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the presence of all the beholders, told him, that the only actors in this traiterous plot, were *Haufray* and *Henry* his sons, and by their means he had taken *Valentine* and put him in Prison, and there meant (in secret manner) to have put him to death. The *K.* having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this Plot against *Valentine*, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The *K.* having thus given sentence against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all haste possible unto the Prison where *Valentine* lay. Orson perceiving the *K.* in person would undertake such a Journey, addressed himself to run along by the *Ks* Horse, leaving him the way, and making many signs of joy and gladness, all the way he went. The *K.* marking well all the Wild-mans behaviour, often spake unto his Lords in this manner: O my Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man should bear such an ardent affection towards *Valentine*; and besides, it strikes me into a thousand imaginations: Now you must know, that the *K.* had great cause, even to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come, to bring it to light, till that by *Clerimond* (Sister unto the *Wyant Ferragus*) it

should be made manifest; for at that time Clerimond has a Castle, and in it a Head of Wives, composed by Necromancy, which head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life; and also, all that ever she had done in her forepassed time: besides, this same head was composed by such wondrous Magick Art, that it should never leave off speaking, until the noblest knight in the world should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair Lady Clerimond shall take to husband, and for whom he shall endure a world of miseries, as God (willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back again to H. Pepin, where before we left him. H. Pepin goeth on his Journey towards the Forest, to save the life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was imprisoned. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the H. barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the residue within the Castle, upon pain of Life. The H. perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within the Castle, they seized upon all rebellious traitors, and bound them fast in chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the H.: Valentine spying the H. fell upon his knees, yielding him thousands of thanks, for that extraordinary kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a Hell of darkness, and fear of death. The Barons also that attended the King welcomed him with great joy and gladness, telling to him all that had hapned, and how that Orson had fought with the traitor Grygar, in his quarrel, and overcame him: Valentine hearing thereof, embraced Orson. Afterward, the H. commanded that all the traitors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine; Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me: but he replied: Dread Sovereign, Pardon me, for I will never return again till I have found out the Parents of whence I am descended; and so humbly I take leave of your Majesty.

So

So here we leave H. Pepin, and only look upon Valentine and Orson, who are taking their way towards Aquitaine, to fight with the Green Knight, a man feared of all men; for I must call to Remembrance, that of which I told you before, that he should never be vanquished by any, save only by a Kings Son that had never suckled woman. Being come to Aquitaine, the people flocked from all parts to see the rough and unmanly shape of Orson, but Valentine seeing their folly, made him a Jacket of steel to put upon him, when Orson had it on his back, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orson having his Steel Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his countenance according to his heart. Now as they were riding on their way, Valentine espied a fair Squire, making much lamentation: Valentine beholding him well, said thus unto him: Friend, what aileth you to shed these tears, have you sustained any wrong either by man or beast: tell me what may be the cause, and I promise you the best of my power to relieve your distressed case: Alas, (said the Squire) thereof I make no doubt; but know this, that the cause of my Laments, is the loss of a most kind and gentle Father, and a man of the greatest Clamour in Christendom. How have you lost him? (quoth Valentine) Sir, as I was travelling towards Aquitaine, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not possible for any one to have, except first he overcome in single combat the Green Knight. Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried: and when he conquereth them, he taketh them to be hanged on a Tree, and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no shew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (quoth Valentine) that thou hast told me? Why then! sure he is some devil in mans shape that doth such strange exploits: What towards Aquitaine am I journeying, to try my fortune against him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon. Ha Sir (quoth the Squire) go not thither, to lose your life upon such a Devil; Squire, said Valentine, I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous Green Knight, but if I can escape him I will first talk with the Lady Fezon, and take her advertisement.

Orson

Orson gathering some understanding of their talk, made signs unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green Kt. and that he would make Love to the Lady Fezon; whereat Valentine laughed heartily. By this time; think them to be come near to the City of Aquitain, standing upon a hill; and meeting with an old man he questioned with him, what City that was before him. Parry (quoth he) it is Aquitain. Now tell me (said Valentine) where resteth the Green Kt.? Why Sir (said he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (qd. Valentine) Ah Sir (said the old man) undertake not so foul a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew thee above forty famous Kts. hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome. Also there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, & the Duke of Aquitain must part with his fair Daughter Fezon, to his great grief, and the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (qd. Valentine) the Gods defend her. We had no sooner spoke these words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore years of age, in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Bellifant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellifant into the Castle of Ferragus the Gyant, as before we have declared; Valentine espying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from Constantinople, but I could not enter into the City, by reason a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a Siege, neither could I come to deliver the message on which I am sent, wherefore I thought it my safest course to return. Pilgrim (qd. Valentine) what thinkest thou of the Green Kt. is it not possible he should be overcome? No said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the enterprise, for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would see the end of you all. Father, whether go you, said Valentine? Sir, I take my readiest way to Paris, for I have a Message to H. Pepin, from a Sister of his named Bellifant, that long hath been banished from Constantinople wrongfully, and now is the good Lady in the House of a Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably, intending to know H. Pepins mind, whether he be consented to these wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat with

with the Emperour of Greece, for that he hath so wrongfully banished her. Palmer (qd. Valentine) I pray thee to return back again with me to Aquitain, for thither am I going, to fight with the Green Kt. If the Gods give me victory against him, I will accompany thee into France, for I shall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto H. Pepin, undertake I this fight, for he hath been the means of my preservation, & as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labours, and rest wholly at his command. Sir (qd. Blandiman) to this motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her affairs, & I will discharge the duty of a trusty Servant towards her, and so taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cause, but he wist not why, for this was the man that had born a part of his Mothers exiles. Well, Valentine also took on his journey, and after some few days, came near to the City of Aquitain.

Valentine beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on he espied a pleasant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a Tree, to refresh his tired limbs, and Orson was his keeper all the while he slept. Anon he awaked and prepared himself to take Horse again, but suddenly there arrived at the same Fountain, a most curious Kt. proud and of so haughty a Stomach that he was stiled the proud Kt. and withal, so fierce and resolute, that he never all the days of his life asked question of any man, yet if he whom he met saluted him not, he presently killed him. This proud Kt. came to the Fountain, and Valentine beholding him, said never a word, & Orson also gazed fiercely upon him. The proud Kt. was angered in his heart, and approached near unto Orson, and gave him such a blow, that the blood issued out of his mouth; Orson feeling the blow smart, suddenly took him and threw him to the earth under him, and presently espying a knife at the Kts Girdle, smote him therewith into the body so deep, that he was nothing but blood. The Kt. feeling himself wounded, cried out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in, rescued the Kt. out of Orsons hands, and said: Fair Kt. you have offered great wrong to smite a poor Gentleman on this rude manner, who can speak never a word: with that the proud Kt. began thus roughly to answer Valentine:

Proud

Proud Discreant, why then dost thou not salute me? and therewith drew forth a Blave, thinking to have smitten him, Valentine seeing the blow, drew forth his sword, and struck at the proud knight with such violence, that he struck him dead, and said unto him: Hereafter learn thou to salute men in a more friendly manner. The Proud Knight being dead, his men fled with all the hast they could unto Aquitain, bearing tybings of their Masters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof; was greatly displeased, for he was his Cozen.

Amongst the rest, Valentine understood of the lamentation that was for the death of the proud Knight beside the Fountain: whereupon he suddenly mounted on Horse-back, and entered the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgesse house of the same City, whereby it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had slain his Cozen. And the Duke commanded that Valentine and his Brother Orson should be brought before him: so being come into the presence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friend quoth he, of whence are you? What Prince do you serve; and whether be ye knights, or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a knight and owe my duty and service to the famous King Pepin of France. Then said the Duke unto him, You have slain my Cozen; tis true (said Valentine) and so I should have done, had it been my own kinsman, for he was of so high a stomach, that he disdain'd to speak to any man, & smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a stranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Green Knight, as also to behold that beauteous Lady Fezon, whom the whole world admires. Wherefore I think it a Law of equity, for Strangers to pass up and down in safety: Consider, I have shewed you the cause of my coming: When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him: Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cozen hath come by this more by Pride, than Courage, I am right sorrowful, and so I pass it over, and pardon the deed, But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to combat the Green Knight; come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventured. Moreover, that you may see that you are not come alone, you shall behold sixteen knights to accompany you, and new arrived for the Love of the Lady Fezon, and to try their valour against the

said

said Green Knight their Enemy. So, I say, to my Palace, salute my Daughter, as my custom is to Strangers, before they adventure their persons in battel with the Green Knight, and having presented your selves before her in the sign of love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, quoth Valentine, I shall be ready to do all Rights and Customs belonging to this place; and besides, I will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command me. This conference ended, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with Valentine and Orson. Having entered the Hall where the knights were assembled, Valentine beheld the Lady sitting amongst them, and making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at last he saluted her thus: Lady, you whose Beauty and Fame is bruted through the world, the Gods preserve thee from the Green Knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your superexcellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it please you to understand, that Pepin the Mighty King of France, hath sent me hither to present unto you the most Noble man that lieth on the earth; to whose Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man, nor any weapon, albeit he cannot speak: wherefore I assure you that the Green Knight is not able to withstand his mighty force, nor make any resistance against him, Sir (quoth the Lady) I yield unto the King of France thousands of thanks, as also to you that have taken such pains to present such a one before me: But say, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better clothed, for methinks he is of an excellent person, well formed, strait, and of a hardy countenance; and if he were washed and bathed in some excellent Liquor, his flesh would be both white and soft. Lady (quoth Valentine) he never wore Garment till it was very lately, and then I caused this Jacket you see him wear, to be made fitting to his body: Moreover, I assure you, that when he came first into Paris, he came like a Wild, Savage, and naked Man, and his flesh was so hard, that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was speaking these words, Fezon beheld him very wisely, for she was in love with him in heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to speak unto her, Lady, for my self I must say something also, therefore, know this, that only for the love of you I have ventured my self in this Climate, to see if fortune will so much favour me, that I may bear you away from all comers, by force of arms, and yet

fair



fair Lady, one thing moze I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my self, that I will never return again into France; till I have proved my fortune on the Green Knight, and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered, or suffer Death, as many moze before me have led the way. Alas, Knight, said the Lady, put not your self in danger for my sake, for methinks it is folly in any man, to endanger himself for the good of another: Again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to accomplish: Why then, fair Knight, God be thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, and Orson the other, also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great Feastings. Being set at the Table, Fezon still fixed her eye most on Orson, and Orson upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing Love-looks one to another, with exceeding gracious aspects: now in the midst of all these Feastings, the Green Knight (as his custom was) came thundering at the Gates, only to have a sight of the beauteous Lady Fezon, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions between him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entered the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying; Valiant Duke of Aquitain, have you yet any moze Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea; I have yet within my Palace, fifteen valiant Knights that mean to try their fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said the Green Knight, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady Fezon: Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free liberty. Wherewithal the Green Knight entered the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another, at last when he had gone through them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, eat and drink, and make merry, for to morrow's day shall be your last; and know that it will fall out to all your shares to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served.

Valentine well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these vaunts might well

well have been smothered in thy breast; for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that will hold thee fast, moze than any that ever yet encountered thee, and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead Corps a Prey for ravenous Beasts. Now Orson understood that Valentine spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the Green Knight by whom so many valiant men had lost their lives: inasmuch, that he saluted him with a fierce visage, and whetting his Teeth leapt from the Table, and taking the Green Knight by the middle, threw him upon his neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that advantage, espying a wall, threw the Green Knight with such violence against the same, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead, and to set him down again at the Table, as before, and in a laughing gesture made signs, that he would bear upon his Back three such as the Green Knight.

At this sudden action of Orson, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, said, Now is he come indeed, that shall be the overthrow of the Green Knight; But we cannot chuse but lament the woful chance that shall befall the Lady Fezon, for he cannot speak, and yet is worthy of all honour amongst the valiantest. The Lady on the other side, beholding his valour, was instantly overcome with the love of Orson, that only he conquered her heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of Courage, began thus to say in the aforesaid presence: Lords, this Wild-man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying any word: but I think good to let you understand, that in the morning I shall be better provided: and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet on purpose, higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished by me; and thereon I will hang his Beastly Corps, for Beasts and Birds to make their Prey.



## C H A P. XXI.

How Orson encountred the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: Also how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

Orson perceiuing the Green Knight displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter with his lips, making signs that he would meet him on the morrow, and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his hood, and threw it on the ground as his Wage: which Valentine seeing, spake thus to the Green Knight: Sir, the wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Wage, whereof, if your stomach serue, I advise you to take it up: Hereat the Green Knight fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a word, Duke Savary being present, said unto him, Sir Knight, I well perceiue that the Battel will grow strong between the Wild-man and you, and I think that he will hold you tough play: wherefore if you chance to conquer him also, you may well report of your valour throughout the World, for he hath tryed some part of his courage already, and in vanquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The Green Knight hereat more and more enraged, swore by all the Gods, that ere the morrow Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: and with these words left the Castle, and betook him to his Habillion.

He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy, and saying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green Knight should meet with his Match. On the other side, fame had so spread abroad the worthy act of Orson the savage upon the Green Knight, that multitudes of people resorted into the Palace to see and behold him; insomuch that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut against them. Orson perceiuing the people so abundantly to approach, and hearing the noise, leapt up into a Window to behold the People, so that they willing to see him, and he desirous to see them, at night they all departed to their houses. The people being departed, and supper ended, they passed the rest of the night in merriments, and so to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber

ber, went to bed, making signs to Orson to lye down by him; but he not regarding his kindness, laid him down upon the ground, according to his wonted use, and so passed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine and Orson went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other Knights, holding a dispute among themselves who should first fight with the Green Knight. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France (called Galeram) and said, Lords, so you be pleased, I am the man intend the first Tryal; to this they agreed, and presently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy; and she to requite his kindness, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him in all danger, so that he may return as Conqueror: The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hasted him towards the Tent of the Green Knight. The Green Knight perceiuing from far his approach, set spurs to his Horse, and encountred the famous Knight Galeram so fiercely, that he smote him off the Horse to the earth; the Green Knight seeing him on the ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took off the Helm from his Head: Galeram fearing nothing but present death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pity, he first despoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. Orson perceiuing that Galeram was put to death, made signs with his hands that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any respite: but Valentine answered him again by signs, that he should withdrau himself for a while; for he would first go to try his own strength on him: Whereupon he presently put himself in Arms: and being armed, took his way towards the beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him; being come before her, she grew wondrous sorrowful, and yet at last she spake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Knight, what madness is this in you, to adventure your self for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I: Well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine enemy; and so farewell.

Leave thus taken of the Lady and the rest of the Knights, Valentine mounted his Horse, to take his way toward the Green Knight. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight who was likewise enamoured with the love of the Lady, and thus began

to say to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your desire, go, and return with Victory. This knights name was Tyris, born in Savoy, a man of great Birth and Living, but riotously had run through his means, leaving himself little, save only his Horse and Arms: Having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he also took leave of the Lords there assembled, and so departed unto the Tent of the Green Knight; the Green Knight perceiving Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Habillion to welcome him. Tyris seeing him, said: Sir, presently mount thy Horse and defend thy self, for I breathe out defiance against thee; the Green Knight hearing him say so, called for his Horse which was presently brought unto him; and putting his foot into the Stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the Saddle, and betook him to his Spear and green Shield, preparing to take their course at each other; but at the first encounter, the Green Knight ran so furiously that he smote Tyris quite through the Body with his Spear, so that he fell down stark dead; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his neck, and hanged him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris, was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking courage, he recommended himself to the Gods: having thus done, he puts Spurs to his Horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent whereas the Green Knight remained. When the Green Knight espied him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the rest; wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight, give ear unto this I now shall say; seest thou yonder Tree: there shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said Valentine) you have Servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched: By my Law (quoth the Green Knight) you shall either bring me the Shield, or else know this, you shall never conquer me. When Valentine had well considered these words he spake as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rose towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the Green Knight, in an angry mood, said thus unto him, Go fetch thy Shield thy self, for I cannot have it, wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastned it: and an evil end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Knight) shall I tell thee wherefore

I

I sent thee thither; it was, for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such vertue, that no man, be he never so strong, can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome; and for the doubt I stood in of thee, therefore I sent thee thither, now my doubt is satisfied; and therefore I advise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy self; for seeing thee so fair a Knight, I am forced to pity thee, and take no pleasure in thy death, from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further to the end thou shouldest not think I uttered these words to abuse thy patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, be he the Son of a King, and next, such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman. Now if thou beest such a one, thou mayest overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own days by an untimely death. At these words Valentine took little pleasure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man: but seeing that he was come to that Enterprize, he would not return till he had assayed his strength against him: and therefore with a loud voice he spake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted Knight, I well understand I am not the man by whom you shall be conquered, yet whosoever I am, I will not depart hence until I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Knight) then thou hast some secret Treason to work against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy death wilfully: but e're I part with thee, I will make thee know the price of this thy rashness: and therewithal leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his Servants to bring unto him a box of precious Balm, the vertue of it was such, that what wound soever he received, though never so mortal, it had power instantly to heal up the breach, having had proof thereof before.

After he had received the Box of Ointment, he suddenly put spurs to his Horse, and couching his Spear in his rest, both ran their course so furiously, that their Spears brake in many pieces: And they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords, whereat Valentine behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the Green Knight so fell a stroke, that he cut him through his Armour, insomuch that the blood issued out in great abundance. The Green Knight feeling himself wounded, lift up his arm to fetch a blow, that he struck away a great piece of his Thigh,

and

and having thus wounded him, said unto him, You may see I can wield a Sword as well as you. I told you before, that you would fall under my hand, and anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corps on a tree, as I have done the rest of the Knights as came before you. Pagan (said Valentine) vaunt not thy self overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered; therefore defend thy self, and therewith he gave the Green Knight such a blow, that he smote away a great quarter of his Shield, and the Green Knight, at the same encounter, brake his Sword upon the Helm of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his Horse: Valentine being always valiant, suddenly recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan seeing him rise up, drew out a sharp-pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Green Knight being thus unarmed of his Weapons, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground, and seeing fit opportunity, cut off his Horse's feet, so that both he and his Horse came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth he suddenly arose again, and then they were both together by strength of arms holding one another. But to be short, the bickering was so fierce between them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before spoken of. This fight continued so long, that the day began to shut in, and both grew extream weary. The Green Knight was sore vexed that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were even spent in weariness, yet he proudly bare it out, saying, Knight, give over, for I perceive thy weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. Go, return again to Aquitaine, and rest there this night, and report that there never encountered me so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou shalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and sore wounded: So going to his Horse, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City: When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine return, they were joyful, and received him in great honour: among the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran and caught him in his arms, and kissed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what

what tidings from the Green Knight: Sir (Valentine) he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man living able to vanquish him. Valentine (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, for never did any return as yet, but all have perished under the hand of the Green Knight. Wherefore you have proved your self a valiant Knight. Gracious Duke (said Valentine) of my conquest over him I can make but small boast, but to morrow there is appointed a new trial of Man-hood, and the Victory may light upon whom the Gods please to favour. Having thus ended conference with the Duke, Valentine was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with life from the Combat of the Green Knight. By this time Supper drew on, and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused Valentine to be set on his left hand, at the upper end of the Board, for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the Green Knight rested in his Pavillion, where we will leave him, and speak of Valentine, who being in his Chamber made many complaints.

## C H A P. XXII.

How Valentine took good advice, and sent Orson on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight; and how Orson overcame him.

Valentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled wondrously as he lay in Bed: still bethinking him on what had hapned him the day before. At last when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolve on this Conclusion. I am not, neither can be that Kings Son that should overcome the Green Knight. for I can neither remove the Shield he sent me for, neither was I nourished without the Breast of Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering whereupon to rely. At last he began thus to think: What if Orson should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of fortunes wrack: why? It shall be so. The break of the day appearing, he arose from his weary Bed, and coming unto Orson, he told him by signs, how that he should put on his Armour, and take his Horse, and make towards the Green Knights Pavillion to fight with him.

Orson understanding by signs his hearts intent, leaped and danced up and down the Hall joyfully, making signs to Valentine again, that the Wagan kt. should never escape his hands, and denying his Horse and Arms, desire nothing of him save only a Club of Wood, such a one as he was accustomed to wield, and shaking his head, made signs that he would have no other Armour against the Wagan kt. Valentine seeing him so resolute, gave him to understand by signs, that he must put on the same Armour, and ride on the same Horse that Valentine brought out of France: so that the Knight should know no other but that it was Valentine that came against him. The Wild-man understanding the subtilty intended, agreed to all that Valentine commanded him. So Orson was armed with the same Armour and Horse which Valentine had imployed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable Creature, and made many signs that he would overcome the Green Knight ere the noontide of the day, without either mercy or pitty; and in these signs he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him signs to stand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the Green kt. with him either alive or dead. After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his Horse, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, so returning back to the Palace, where the Lady sat accompanied with her Train, and espying her, would have run unto her and kissed her, for by signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would presently fight with the Wagan kt. The Lady in a smile, retorted back again (in sign) that she loved him exceeding well; wishing him to bear himself valiantly, and at his return back again, she would grant him her love. Thus having taken his leave of the Lady Fezon, and the rest there assembled, he betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Dukes Palace, there was nothing so much talked generally throughout the City, as the Wild-man was gone to Combat with the Green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orson came unto the Pavilion of the Green kt. and without any words smote the top thereof with his Spear, signifying Defiance.

The

The Green Knight taking this rustick salutation in great scorn, swore by Mahomet, that he would fetter his pride ere the evening Sun took rest, and therewithal mounted on his Steed and couching his Spear in his Rest, he entered the Field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readines, seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more Courage, they encountered with such force, that both Horse and Men fell to the earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered their feet, drew forth their Swords, and laid one at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow, that he cut the circle of gold upon his Helm, and smote a great piece of his Shield quite off, and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the outrage of the stroke, his Sword fell out of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce than before, rolling his eyes, and shaking his head: at last with his Sword he took the Giant such a pat upon his head, that he entered the flesh, and bare a great part thereof afore him, and his Sword sliding off his head, took him on the arm so powerfully, that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green Knight having his former Balsamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, sith he could heal himself so quickly.

Upon this Orson threw away all his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly run upon the Green Knight, and caught him fast by the arms so strongly, that he cast him on the ground: Being under him, Orson took off his Helm, and held him so down, that the Green kt. did yield to his mercy; Orson nothing regarding his submission would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in presently to his rescue, by riding post, to see the end of the Combat. Being come, he made signs to Orson that he should not kill him, which Orson obeyed, but still kept him in subjection. And at last Valentine began to speak to the Green kt. saying, Proud kt. you well see that you are in the hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for look how you have done to the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree, so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest branch of all above the rest. Alas (quoth the Green Knight) you seem to be a man of pitty, furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto



you is, to spare my life. So, (quoth Valentine) that shall I not except upon condition; First, that you renounce your Paganism: and Secondly, go with me into France to K. Pepin, telling him, that by Valentine and Orson you were overcome in single Combat. To all these Conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath to perform whatsoever you have already spoken.

Then Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so that he left him nothing about him to make any further resistance. Being upon his feet, he spake thus to Valentine: Sir, it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this day also; but I see I am conquered by the man, that in the Dukes Palace threw me on the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very same. Why then (quoth the Green Kt.) I shall reveal unto thee one secret more, and I beseech thee grant unto me my request; send this Kt. that

hath conquered me unto yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield there fastned, then I am well assured he is the man that should conquer me, or else there is none living can triumph in my request. Whereupon Valentine made a sign unto Orson to fetch away that Shield, who did as he appointed him, and coming near the Tree, he stretched forth his arm to take it down, and suddenly it leaped into his hand, and so he brought it with him to the Green Kt. When he saw Orson have the Shield, his heart smote against his sides, and throwing himself at his feet, would have kissed them: but Orson receiving signs from Valentine to the contrary, would not suffer him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he spake thus: Alas, I of all others, owe unto you all my service, and all reverence: for now I am assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Kt. and amongst all other I confess that by conquering me, you have won unto your self Everlasting Fame.

Moreover, this assure your self, that he that conquers me, can be no less than a Son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman: and that this shall appear to be truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister Clerimond, for she hath a Head of Brass that telleth her the adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generation shall befall. Likewise that this Head shall continue speaking until such time as the most worthiest Kt. of the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth, and he being once entred, the said Head should lose his vertue, and is the only man to have my Sister Clerimond to Wife; wherefore (fair Kt.) these things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and most Renowned Kt. in the whole World.



## C H A P. XXIII.

*Orson* having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* caused him to be Christned, and sending him to King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.

**T**he Green Knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring *Valentine* accepted, and the Green Knight yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards France, to accomplish that Vow that he before had given him. *Valentine* having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended to him. After this the Green Knight (by consent) was crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great state: presently upon this league of friendship concluded, he gave commandment throughout all his Host, that every man should depart away from the confines of Aquitaine, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage to Duke *Savary's* Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and *Orson* took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of Aquitaine, where at was no little joy; and the Duke with all his Lords, received him with great triumph into the City. The Green Knight, being thus brought as a Prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honoz unto the Knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less than Son to a King; and also, that he never sucked *Mans* Breast, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for so it was ever said by the Brazen Head that standeth in the Chamber of my Sister *Clerimond*. Quoth the Duke, well may this carry some likelihood of truth, for he hath borne himself very valiantly against you, wherefore I think it my part to honoz him with my utmost endeavours.

By this time is this worthy Train entered the Dukes Palace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughters presence, and then he said unto her, Daughter, behold here the Green Knight, that hath for your love made spoil of my Country, and I was no way able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Knight, that *Valentine* hath

hath brought along with him, from the Court of *K. Pepin*, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears: wherefore this is my desire, that as he hath conquered yours and mine Enemy, so he may also conquer your love, whereunto I right willingly agree that you shall have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this manner: My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reason why I should resist, but do submit my self to your dispose, for if I should do otherwise, it were in me great disobedience. And again my Lord, you know promise is already past, that whosoever he was that could vanquish the Pagan Knight, should for his labour receive me for his Wife: Now my Lord, the day of my deliberance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouse; otherwise I shall make void the Court before gone throughout the World, and you thought false in your promises. Daughter (quoth the Duke) you have spoken right graciously, and your answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us, wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conqueror Knight whether he will have you. If he agree unto this match, I shall give him in Dowry half my Country of Aquitaine: hereupon *Valentine* standing by, demanded of *Orson* by signs, whether he would have the fair Lady *Feczon* to Wife: Who answered again by signs, that he would never have other: Then caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them; and so their time was passed with many disports. These things thus ended, *Orson* made signs unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the use of his tongue, and that his Companion *Valentine* had conquered the Love of the Lady *Clerimond*. Of all which you shall here more hereafter.

## C H A P. XXIV.

How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Feczon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge she gave unto him.

**T**he day being past with great Banquetings and Solemnity, wherein *Feczon* was assured unto *Orson*, the night approached, and every man betook him to his rest: Amongst the rest *Valentine* and

and Orson were lodged most richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the Apparition of an Angel



appeared unto him, saying, Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou speedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orson, by whom the Green Kt. hath been vanquished, and without further delay, get thee into the Castle of Ferragus, there you shall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art descended.

This strange Vision drove Valentine into a thousand fears, and in great melancholly passed he away the night: the day being broken, he caused Orson to arise, and being ready, they both hasted them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barons attending on him, and amongst the rest there present the Green Kt. Not long after entered the Duke, being entered, the Green Kt. took an occasion to give him the time of the day, and began to speak unto him on this manner: Most renowned Duke, I freely confess my self vanquished

and

and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting peace with you, upon condition that you cause me to be Baptized. He said the Duke, well have you said; I grant your request. When the Priest was come that should baptize him, Valentine being present, began thus to say: Lords, and the residue here assembled, may it please the valiant Duke to grant me one Wish, which is this, that the name of this Kt. be called Pepin, it is the name of the most mighty K. of France, that nourished and fostered me even from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto Valentine's demand, so he was called Pepin; after the Baptism, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orson for to Wed his Daughter, the beauteous Lady Fezon, but Valentine not allowing thereof made this excuse, that both he and Orson had vowed to go to Jerusalem, ere they did attempt any other action, after the conquest of the Green Kt.

The Duke hearing this excuse, gave them leave, upon this condition, that Orson should take an Oath to return again into Aquitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed. The same hour also, the Green Kt. took leave of the Duke of Aquitain, and went his way into France, to keep his promised Faith to K. Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him for the Ring that he had promised; who gave it unto him, saying, Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of false accusation. When Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger; so Orson and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Castle of Ferragus: and the Green Kt. likewise took leave for France, to yield himself to K. Pepin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Lady Bellisant, was arrived at K. Pepin's Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the K. he wondered at this his unlookt for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. To this he (said Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperour Alexander, and at this time lieth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her misery.

D

CHAP.

## C H A P. XXV.

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the *Green Knight* submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*.

**B**landiman having delivered his Message, the *K.* began to demand of him where his Sister was: Blandiman replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any: But worthy *K.* if you make doubt of her Loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight the quarrel, to prove her Honest. Say (quoth the *K.*) I have seen tryal enough thereof already, by the dowfall of the Arch-Bishop, also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any tidings of her; and indeed that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was repulsed the Kingdom; neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that burden. My Lord, (quoth Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my Lady laid her great Belly in the Forrest of Orleance, and while she dispatched me to get her the help of a Woman, &c I could return, she was delivered of two fair Soons, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Bear into the Wood, she never wist whither; but she followed the Bear so long, till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the Ground. I coming to her, took her up in my arms, and comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woful Sighs she unfolded unto me the whole manner of the loss of her Child by the Bear: and for the other she had left it under the Tree: I hearing her say so, hastened towards the Tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child neither. And thus (worthy *K.*) have I related unto you the whole story of your Sister and her two Infants in the Forrest: and other tidings have I none, but this, that I am that Blandiman that you gave unto your Sister to attend her, when she married the Emperour Alexander. The *K.* giving ear unto this Tale, at last said: Alas Blandiman, thy words strike me into a thousand fears, what should become of my Sister: but seeing thou canst tell

no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou hast told me. My Lord (quoth he) it was even that day you met me in the Forrest of Orleance, and I related unto you the piteous tydings of your Sisters banishment. This struck the *K.* into such an admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, and then presently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in the Forrest, and how by the same Valentine, Orson was conquered in the same Wood. When he began to think on the story that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister, wherefore he sent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what Blandiman had declared, saying, My Lords, I have long time thought, and brought up in my Court two pretty Children, and now it doth plainly appear they are Sons to an Emperour, and my near kinsmen: Valentine the one, whom I found in the Forrest of Orleance, brought forth there by my Sister Belisane, in the time of her exile; and Orson who was likewise banished by Valentine, to be his Natural Brother, and both Sons to the Emperour of Greece. At these tidings all the Court was wondrous joyful, save only Haufrey and Henry, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts very sorrowful, for above all other they desired the death of Valentine, that next him they might work their wills on their younger Brother Charlemain, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will more plainly appear.

But to return back again to Blandiman, who hearing the *K.* speak so much of the two Children, demanded of the *K.* if he knew in what Country they were: Wherby (said the *K.*) one of these I have brought up in my Court a long time, in such fashion, that he is become a right valiant Knight, and by his valour hath conquered his Brother, being a Gypsy-man, living in the Wood at Orleance like a Beast, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their way towards Aquitaine, to fight with a right champion, called the Green Knight, and since their departure I never heard what became of them, Sir, said Blandiman, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near Aquitaine I met two such; but I am troubled that I know them not.

h. musing at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same day the Green Kt. (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at Paris at the Ks. Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the K. he saluted him with great reverence. The K. seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Kt. replied again on this manner. Honourable K. know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Kt. that for the love of the Lady Fezon, Daughter to the Duke of Aquitaine, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and having him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months, upon these Conditions; that if within that time he found not forth a Kt. that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his Daughter Fezon to Wife; on the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing any further Damage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by divers valiant Kts. of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and there still hanged upon a Tree: At last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Kts. the one named Valentine, and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he boze himself so bravely, that night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tyred, and weary: The next morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow Orson, armed in Valentine's Armour, entred the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addressed out my self against him, but little availed my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon us, and rescued me, upon Condition: First, that I should forsake Mahomet: Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your command, and to stand to your sentence either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is my name.

The K. having heard all this long story from the Green Kt. made this answer in the presence of all the Barons: Welcome to us, and

of your Company we are right glad, live with us in our Court, and be jocond, for I freely grant you your life, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The K. shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Kts. were, that had conquered him: Harry (quoth the Green Kt.) I left them both at Aquitaine with the Valiant Duke Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of Blandiman and the Green Kt. K. Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beauteous Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these tydings hapned, K. Pepin made a solemn Vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece, to tell the Emperour of these glad some tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

#### C H A P. XXVI.

How K. Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear these tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured Constantinople.

**K**ing Pepin having put himself in a readiness to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honour, and much feasting. Upon a day as he sat at Dinner with the Pope in his Palace Pontifical. there came tydings unto him, that the Great Souldan of Egypt had besieged Constantinople. The Kt. that brought this message, after his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power have besieged and wrongfully over-run Constantinople; and I am charged to crave your aid against these Enemies of Christendom. When the Pope understood these ill-welcome tydings, he was driven into a wondrous dump, not knowing any present way to send them relief: but K. Pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this business, for I request but a competent Sum of Money and Men, and I shall lead them to Constantinople with such a Courageous heart

heart, that I shall put the Souldan and his Forces to the worst, such an inveterate hatred bear I against these Pagan Devils. The Pope hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his courageous heart, and said unto him: Right Christian K. seeing thou dost proffer thy self in Person to undertake this Service, I shall with all convenient speed provide for a business of such import. Presently hereupon all things being prepared, with an Army of Thirty thousand Romans, K. Pepin departed, and as soon as possible he could, he arrived at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Souldans Army, betaking themselves into the City, keeping the same against all the force of the Pagans.

The Emperor himself was forced to retire into the City, and being coped up in so small a Compass, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Bellisant, whom he had cruelly banished; always fearing that she was dead, so it was now full twenty Winters past, since the time of her exile. By this time is K. Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Habillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his Forces into Battel-array. The Souldan having knowledge of his arrival, and also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Habillion, and being set down in his magnificence, there came unto him certain of his Camp, fearfully and doubtfully, saying thus unto him: Great and mighty Souldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately arrived to the number of two hundred thousand Romans, to bid us present Battel, under the conduct of Pepin K. of France: Wherefore it only resteth now, that you take sudden advice how to prevent and resist these Forces: Peace Strach Duls (quoth the Souldan) be not afraid, for you are deluded by some false report; the whole Roman Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army. Go on I say courageously, for I swear by Mahomer, e're long I shall bring under my subjection, both the Kingdom of Rome and France also: wherefore call up your troops; plant them, and put your Squadrons in readines to receive them.

The morrow following, K. Pepin set his Army in order of Battel, fiercely to assault the Pagan Host, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperor, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperor, that

that they within the City should put themselves in readines, and issue out upon the Pagans on that side, for K. Pepin and his companies would receive them on the other side, then being all encompassed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperor received these Letters joyfully, and did as K. Pepin commanded them, and issued forth of the City, bidding battel to the Sarazens. They were no sooner entred the field, but they perceived the Army of K. Pepin marching on with Banners displayed, and noise of Trumpets sounding in most courageous manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Souldan calling to him two of his hardiest Men of War, commanded them secretly to go through the Host of the Christians, and if it were possible, to number them. These two did as the Souldan commanded, but being come near the Host of K. Pepin, the Green Kt. espying them coming down a little Hill, drawing somewhat nearer, he discerned they were Sarazens, and presently putting spurs to his Horse, ran against them with such fury, that his spear brake upon his thigh; the Sarazens seeing him run so fiercely, did not fly, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chap.

#### C H A P. XXVII.

How the Green Knight justed against the two Sarazens, and having slain the one, the other fled: and how King Pepin and his Host was lodged within Constantinople.

THE Green Kt. having recovered a new spear, he ran fiercely against both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place smote him to the Earth, so that he never rose, then making against the other, he gave him such a wound that he suddenly fled away: K. Pepin seeing this accident, presently assailed the Souldans Host, and Myllon Daugler slew the K. of Aquile, and three other e're he gave over the field, with many and divers other worthy deeds of Chivalry: The Souldan seeing him so play the Devil in his Host, cryed out, to follow Daugler that had made such havock: So they did as he commanded, pursuing him so close on both sides, that at length they cut off one of his Horses thighs,



thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished, had not the Green Mt. (maugre all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the Press, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly horsed him, and brought him clean out of Danger. After this they both joyned together in such furious out-rage, that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this Battle, and endured long, but R. Pepin and his men made great slaughter amongst the Pagans: but notwithstanding all this their valour, they had lost the day, had it not been for the Emperoz, that with his Host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and made amongst them a bloody slaughter. The R. seeing the courage of the Emperoz so great, gathered together again his scattered Troops, and entred into the Battle again with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the R. came unto the sight of the Emperoz, he said unto him: Great Prince, Welo thy self right valiant, and this day, e're night, I shall tell thee tydings of the Lady Bellifant.

These words added fresh Courage unto the Emperoz, who cryed out to his men: Courage for Constantinople, and he that wins Honour shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred into the thickest of the Battle; where he, R. Pepin, and the Green Mt. so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should ever escape away alive, and therefore fearing the worst, betwix themselves to flight. But their flight being espyed by the R. of Slavonia, who led the Rear-ward of the Soldan, presently rushed in with his Troops, consisting of fifty thousand fighting men, making withal so great a shout, that it seemed by the sound thereof, their part got the better. The Emperoz and the R. perceiving their coming, wisely considered that their men were tired and out-worn, and the Enemy fresh and lusty sounded a Retreat, and retired themselves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Soldan seeing this, followed upon them, and strongly besieged the City round about, so that neither the Emperoz nor the R. could issue out thereof. Thus they abode till they were well nigh famished, thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine and Orson, who for the

the love of Clerimond, have adventured, as you have already heard.

### C H A P. XXVIII.

How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle, wherein fair Clerimond was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents.

After many days travel, at last Valentine and Orson lighted upon an Island, In which Island stood a Castle strong and impregnable; the covering whereof was of shining mettall, glittering in the Sun, that it drave Valentine into suspicion that it was it, whereunto the Green Mt. had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady Clerimond. At all adventures he maketh way towards the Castle, and at last entred into this Island by one of the Ports thereof. Being entered, he demanded who was the owner of that Castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye: Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the fair Lady Clerimond, Sister unto the Gyant Ferragus, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in this Castle, he caused one Chamber to be richly adoized, of the which Chamber more shall be spoken of it in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto Valentine, amongst other things, that in the Chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of Brass, composed a long time before, by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that was demanded: Valentine hearing this strange Relation of the Castle, was right glad, for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the Green Mt. told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all Nations for her excellent Beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on his way, accompanied with Orson, to see if he could get entrance into this Castle: By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by ten sturdy Knights, that kept the Gate night and day.



When they saw Valentine and Orson make proffer to enter, they said unto them: Lords, or whatever you be, withdraw your selves back, for into this Castle entereth none, of what birth soever, without the leave and license of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard) do appertain. Why (quoth Valentine) go tell her, and ask whether it be her pleasure we enter or not: Whereupon one of them entered the Chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling unto her said: Lady, before your Gate standeth two Gallants, that would enter your Castle, they seem fierce and courageous, full of high spirit, and men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion of our Country: Now fair Lady say, shall they have entrance? Descend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a Window to take a view of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, for I mean to question with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded, then Clerimond that was well languaged, leaned out of the Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto Valentine: What are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle

Castle without leave? Lady, (quoth Valentine with an undaunted courage) I am a knight that travelleth this way, and would gladly speak with that Head of Brass that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I understand) it resolveth doubts. It quoth the Lady, upon these terms you may not enter, but if you can bring me any certain signs from one of my Brethren, either from Sir Ferragus, or the Green Knight Lord of Tartary, then you may freely enter this Castle; or by no other means, yet you may enter, that is, by the Seneschal of this place, with whom you may run six courses with your spear, to try your valour; wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in single combat; as I have told you. Lady, quoth Valentine, against your Seneschal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by pondrous blows, than by entreats, and fawning speeches. This choice chose Valentine, rather than to betray the King which he had brought along with him, given him by the Green Knight to present to his Sister Clerimond. The Lady seeing his resolute hardiness, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brass stood, and said unto it: what is that knight of courage that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady, quoth the Head, of that knight you shall know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this answer seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in love with Valentine.

#### CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewailed the love of Valentine: And how he justified for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschal.

Clerimond pondring in her mind the words of Valentine, being overcome with affection, said on this manner: Ah! Valentine is valorous, and beautiful, and if I have power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take other Husband than this knight. Whereupon she sent for the Seneschal, and told him that this knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschal thereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love.

Seneschal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently,



and so he departed to put himself in Arms, being armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his rest, and withal issued out of the Gate in readiness. The Lady also got into a Window to behold the Combat. When Valentine saw the Seneschal to come towards him, he couched his spear, and putting spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their Spears brake in pieces: presently having a new supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground Horse and Man; but Valentine's Horse got up with his Master, Valentine being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneschal: Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no honour in conquering an enemy at advantage. Whereupon the Seneschal was freshly mounted, and new Spears given them again: then took they a fresh career, and herewithal Valentine so encountred him about the head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man down upon the earth: The Seneschal feeling himself in danger, said thus unto Valentine, *Kt. I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never*

in my life found I a man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure, (only upon this condition, that you speak not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Quoth Valentine thou hast requested that which I will not grant, and know, it was for her love that I came hither, and though I never yet saw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Wherefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, and also with the Brazen Head. The Lady all this while standing at the Window, wondered what conference passed between these two Champions, and at last thus said unto one of her Maidens: See how indiscreet this Seneschal is, to fight with such a valiant *Kt.* who long since might have taken away his life. When Valentine saw the great pride of the Seneschal, and that he stood it out with him, being his Prisoner, he presently run against him another course, and therewithal gave him so deadly a stroke, that he ran him clean through the Body, so that he fell off his Horse stark dead, at which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the Gates, and that Valentine should be brought up unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lady beheld Valentine well, she came towards him, and said unto him on this manner: *Kt.* you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and courageous man all the days of my life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your Valour and Chivalry, that you are descended from the Loins of some Royal Stock. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poor Adventurer, for neither my self, nor this my Companion, never knew from what Stock we descended. He was nourished by a Beast in the Forrest, and lived there like a Wild-man, till when as I conquered him by my Sword; besides, he never spake in his life more than you see at this instant. Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being so fair a Lady.

#### C H A P. XXX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was descended.

Valentine having purchased free entrance by overcoming the Seneschal, at last he shewed the King that the Green Knight had

had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the token, saying, Fair Kt. had you shewed this King when you first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but sith it hath pleased you to try your valour, I cannot better commend you, than to admire your brave courageous heart. Whilst Valentine and the Lady were thus talking together, the Tables were spread, the Lady sat down, and Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she took her greatest felicity, as he in her: Dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the Table, and taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my priviest Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein the Brazen-head standeth, the which Head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tydings: wherefore both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Whereat Valentine grew exceedingly joyful: first, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber door guarded on this manner: On the one side a grim, fearful, and ugly shapen Willain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his neck, which offered to make resistance: On the other side of the Chamber door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladies leave, or else fight with the Willain and a Lyon, Valentine perceiving these two Watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered, These two you see here are to keep this Door, that none may enter without fighting with them; and that divers have perished in their presumption: And again, the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a K. and to such she shews her self very loving.

Lady (quoth Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. Orson likewise assailed the Willain, and ere he could be ready to lift up his Club

Club of Iron, he took him by the middle so strongly, that he threw him against the wall, he took away his Club, and gave him such a blow that he tumbled on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, he had slain him in that place. Being both thus vanquished, the Gate was opened, and they entered the Chamber, wherein they might see all the World could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Sapphires, with great multitudes of precious stones: within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich, of which two of them are yellow as most fine Gold, and a third Green, more Green than Grass, a fourth more red than a flame of fire; between these Pillars was a precious Stone, called an Amery, more rich than the heart of man can devise, in the midst of which stood a Head of Brals, set upon a rich Pillar. Valentine wondering at the riches of these objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publicly open concerning his Birth. At length when every voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner. Thou Famous Kt. of Royal Parentage, art called *Valentine the Valiant*, of whom it may justly be said, there was never the like appeared before me; thou art the Man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of *Greece*, and thy Mothers Name is *Bellisant*, Sister to *K. Pepin of France*, who by wrong Suggestions hath been banished her Country, and Husbands Bed; know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal*, in the Castle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the keeping of her these twenty years: *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the Wild-man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother; you two were delivered by the Empress *Bellisant*, in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy Companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nourished in that Wood, amongst the rest of her Whelps, and never sucked he any other: For thy part *Valentine*, thou wast found the very same day in that Forrest by *K. Pepin*, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy Brother here present, shall never have the use of his Tongue, till a Thread be cut under the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun and thou shalt prosper, for my time is at a Period sith thou art come to enter into this Chamber.

Valentine marking well all that the Head had uttered, fell upon the bosom of his Brother Orson, and Orson on his, and with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus to break out into speeches: Alas, courteous It. I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you I am freed of ten years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again by this Brazen-head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my affections should rest, and wherunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth Valentine) I accept you as my Wife, who was given to me by your Brother the Green It. that was vanquished by my Brother Orson before the City of Aquitain: only this I shall request. That as your Brother the Green It. hath forsaken Mahomet, so you would do the like. Sir (quoth she) I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you and I shall live. And so great joy betided all the Inhabitants of this Castle, for they were right glad of the tidings that the Brazen-head had declared unto him. After this, the reputation of Valentine increased more and more: but all his former joy and gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

## C H A P. XXX.

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

**N**ow shall you understand, that within this Castle where Clerimond was, dwelt a Dwarf (named *Pacolet*) which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a Child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in Schools. This *Pacolet* being of more Age than stature, grew exceeding witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in Negromancy, that by Enchantment, he had composed a little Horse made of Wood: in the head of which Horse, he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of Wood, that every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he would turn the pin towards the place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run through the air swifter than any Bird.

His

This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had fit time, he addressed himself for Portugal, to bear news to *Ferragus*, how all matters had passed at the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden Horse, and in a moment of time (setting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his desired wish, and related the story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard this Tale, he grew exceeding angry against *Valentine*, for that he should have his Sister in Marriage: Also, he grew enraged at her, that she should grant her love unto him (being a Christian Knight) swearing by his Gods to take revenge upon them both: But all this he dissembled unto *Pacolet*, bidding him return and bear this message to Clerimond, that the Knight *Valentine*, who shall have her to Wife, is right welcome, and that ere long I will come in person to visit them, accompanied with a gallant Troop of Nobles, and then shall their Nuptials be royally solemnized: So *Pacolet* took leave and got him on his Horse, and was in an instant at home again. Being come, he presently went into the presence of the Lady Clerimond, and said unto her: Madam, I have been in Portugal with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your choice with *Valentine*, and promiseth ere long to be here in Person, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus: Ah *Pacolet*, is this true that thou hast told? Aye me, the Gods defend my Brother from Plotting any Treason against me, for I am well assured he could never abide a Knight of France, nor any other that is a Christian; I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had a serious business for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Christian Woman, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother *Ferragus*, in the Castle that he now holdeth:



## C H A P. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious Journey into *Portugal* to see the Lady *Bellifant*, *Valentine's* Mother, his returning back, and the news that he brought.

**T**HE Lady having ended her tale, *Pacolet* made her this answer: Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake, make another journey into *Portugal*, and before to morrow mid-day, I shall bring you tidings whether she be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him say so, replied: That thou canst not do, except the Devil be in thee: The Lady *Clerimond* said unto *Valentine*: Let him alone, for by art he hath provided, that he will ride more than a thousand miles a day. Hereat *Valentine* marvelled much, and calling *Orson* unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that hindered his speech, which being done, he spake presently, where he related the story of his life led in the Forest, which held them the



most part of that evening. On the morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promised, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, saying unto him on this manner: Sir, I am returned from *Portugal*, and have seen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth *Valentine*) thou art right welcome, for it is the only desire to hear of. Love (quoth *Clerimond*) be not too hasty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into *Portugal* to him, and then we shall have both our hearts desire. Nay surely (quoth *Pacolet*) your Brother will come hither: I (quoth the Lady) but I stand in fear of him, lest that he work some Treason against us; for this last night I dreamed a fearful dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamed I was in a great water, in the which I should have perished, had it not been for a great face that drew me out thereof, being out, methought I saw a Griffin issue out of a Cloud, who with his talons took me up, and carried me I know not whither. Love (quoth *Valentine*) give no respect at all to Dreams, for they be but Delusions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true (quoth she) but they trouble me every night. Having ended this discourse, they entered into a fair Arbor, garnished with great varieties of Flowers, reposing themselves some few hours in long dalliance, where we will leave them, and you shall hear that the same day arrived *Ferragus* the Traytor, at the Castle of *Clerimond*.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her; Sister, above all Creatures living, I have most desired to see you, tell me, I pray you, which is the I. t. you mean to make your Husband? This, fair Brother is the man. Whereupon *Valentine* saluted him with great reverence. *Ferragus* said unto him: Fair I. t. Be welcome into these Quarters, for the love of my Sister *Clerimond*; for seeing it is so fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the Green I. t. and sent him into France, causing him to be Christened, even so have I a great desire to be baptized, to become a Christian and follow your Religion.

*Valentine* believed all these words which he had spoken; but under these fair promises he smothered Treason; yet at last *Valentine* began thus to say unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the space of these twenty years, you have maintained

a Christian Woman, who is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her name is Bellifant, Sister to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperoz of Greece. By Mahomet, said Ferragus, you say truth, and to the end your eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into Portugal, so shall you rightly be informed whether she be the Lady you seek for, or no; Gramercy (quoth Valentine) and so Ferragus left him, and said unto his Sister Clerimond after this manner: Sister, my Soules joy, I desire your advancement more than any thing on earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Espousal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire is, that you would go with me into Portugal, and there with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to solemnize your Nuptial-day.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the Treachery of *Ferragus*; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woful Lamentations.

**F**erragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his Ships in a readiness, and packing up all their Provision, they put forth for Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of Valentine and Orson. In the dead time of the night, when the two Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their Beds, and committed them to bands, muzzling their eyes also, that they could not see: Now when Clerimond saw what was done to her love, she fell into an extream agony, and with watry eyes began thus to vent her lamentations: Alas dear Valentine, our joys are suddenly turned unto sorrow, thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast received the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my

Love;

Love: thou hast robbed me of all joy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death these two Knights, you carry to your Grave the name of a Villain. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see two such Innocents falsely put to death without desert. Wea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow, she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict command that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the Prisoners, thus leaving her to her laments, and the Christians, both Valentine and Orson fast bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my youth in travel and danger, only to find out the Parents that begat me, and see now when hope had well nigh set an end to all my sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine Enemies, that only seek my death. Alas Brother Orson, how suddenly are all our joys blasted, and our mirth turned into mourning? On this wise complained Valentine and Orson, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugal, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tidings was brought to the Lady Bellifant, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners: at which news she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a sight of them. When she was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children (quoth she) of what Country be you, and where were you born. Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not far from Paris: Ferragus perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying, Lady, leave your questioning, for except they receive their Faith, they shall miserably end their days in Prison: and he withal called unto him a Hayloz, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with Bread and Water. This misery was not sufficient, but more than that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two Children with their fists and staves.

After

After Ferragus had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister Clerimond unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen-head, as well appeareth, in that you make your choice with one of the contrary Religions: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to Husband, that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight; next a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say, therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raise your Fortunes, by matching you unto that Puissant King Trompart. Forget, I say, these two Frenchmen, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Brother, (quoth Clerimond) it behoveth me to obey you; for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have, for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These discourses finished, Ferragus departed with his Queen and other Attendants, and entering the great Hall, with very much honour and reverence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Queen thus saying unto her: Sister, Welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth Clerimond) I give you a Million of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither, under colour of friendship and love, brought over by my Brothers fair promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatened to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pity me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living; he is the comliest, valiantest, and hardiest Knight that lieth upon the face of the earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of Arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my love; wherefore, Lady, pity my distressed estate, and let me see that Christian Lady, which you have so long within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly come to your desire herein; and so bringing them together, the Lady Bellifant said thus unto her: Lady, what is your will with me? speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say. When thus, I bring you joyful tidings, and yet the end of my tale will be

be as sorrowful, as the beginning is joyful: know this, that I am not ignorant of your Estate and Dignity, for you are Sister to Pepin King of France, and Wife unto the Emperour of Greece, who wrongfully banished you his Country: Soon after your exile you were in your travel delivered of two fair Sons in a Forest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true. Nay Lady, your Children are both alive, and I can tell you where to find them. At these words Bellifant fell into a swoon for joy; Clerimond quickly recovered her again, and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damoysel, how came all these things to your understanding? When Clerimond related the whole story; how Ferragus her Brother by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. Bellifant hearing her two Children were imprisoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, insomuch that the Wife of Ferragus entered the Hall, to understand the cause of their mournful clamours; Clerimond told the Queen all from point to point. Well (said the Queen) he appeased, and dissemble the cause from the King, for if he have any knowledge thereof, it will make him rather so much the worse, than better affected, either to them, or you.

#### C H A P. XXXIV.

How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

As these two Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horse. When Clerimond saw him, she wept bitterly, and said: Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldst thus rob me of all my joys at once, for I am well assured that thou mightest have given me warning of all these miseries. Lady (quoth Pacolet) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am ignorant of all that hath betided you, but seeing you have begun these bitter bickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a remedy for you to avenge your self, and to that purpose, I here vow all my service unto you and Valentine, while life doth last. Friend (quoth the Lady Bellifant) if thou canst but free my two Children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy labours every way. Lady (quoth

(quoth Pacolet) no more take you care, but comfort your self, and ere long you shall well perceive my crafty work to take such effect by my Art, that you shall have cause to remember me while you have a day to live.

## C H A P. XXXV.

How by Art *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the Prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines with their Mother, and fair *Clerimond*.

**I**t chanced that on a day *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which day they passed in such rebelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themselves to rest. Being all at rest, *Pacolet* was still watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whose Gates were brass, and surely locked, by his enchantment the Gates flew open, and he entered therein. Anon he came unto the doo of the Prison, where the Ladies two Sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the doo, the Locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the doo open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death; and at last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him: Take courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for death: and sith it is so, he that first entreth here, to lay hand upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar, that lay thereby: But at last *Pacolet* spake to them, saying, Lords, fear me not, for I am come to set you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no noise, but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother: *Valentine* at this speech rejoiced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an austere look, would not give any credit to his words. *Pacolet* at the fierce look of *Orson* was much astonished, inasmuch that he gave back, but by the words of *Valentine* he was much comforted, and *Orson's* fury abated.

After this, *Pacolet* led them to the Chamber whereas these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful tears. When he came unto the doo of the Chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entered in, *Pacolet* so wrought with his charms, that all that

were

were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead sleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber, whereas the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly fell into a swoond, speaking unto them never a word: but the Lady *Clerimond* piteously said thus unto *Valentine*: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extasie. Then *Valentine* embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and *Orson* also clasped her about the middle, saying unto her; Sweet Mother, speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender lips, but all this while she spake never a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the earth in a swoond, and there lay panning for breath a long season, while the fair Lady *Clerimond* stood over them, bewailing this strange accident: At last, coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them weeping; Alas my Children, for your sakes have I suffered more pain and anguish than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cause of these my dolorous passions, but sith the Gods have so ordained that I may once see you, and embrace you before my death, all my griefs are banquished, and become no burden unto me. But tell me, how have you been preserved ever since your birth, and in what Country, and with whom have you remained? for it would glad me to here the event thereof. At last (she having ended her words) *Valentine* began the piteous story of all their miseries, even to that present hour. *Valentine* having finished his sad tale, by which the Empress *Bellissant* clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailing with many more tears than before, she would fain again have fallen into a swoond, but *Pacolet* prevented her, who was at that instant in the Chamber, saying unto her: Lady, leave these lamentations, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and so rid us out of the subjection of *K. Farragus*. Alas, said *Clerimond*, my love, remember the oath that you made unto me, to make me your wife. Dear Lady (quoth *Valentine*) what I have promised I will perform, but at this present the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the heart.

These words of *Valentine* being ended, *Orson* said unto *Pacolet*; Go open me the doo of *Ferragus*, and with these hands I shall work his final downfall and overthrow. *Pacolet* answered. Come, go along with me, and I shall gladly open it, to fulfill this your desire.

R

But

But know this, if you further him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the Green Knight, who may others and sundry ways do us displeasure. (quoth Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion; for I would not have you guilty of such a crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gain the whole world.

At this very hour they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready rigged, and having a fair gull of wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond: whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.

#### CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*.

**V**alentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of *Ferragus*, fearing least he should follow them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present, to victual their Ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition to be in readiness upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother *Bellissant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, saying; that he would suddenly depart for Greece, towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperor, who without any just cause, had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orson* and *Pacolet*.

The next day they took Shipping, and went on their voyage, and at break of day, the Taylor according to his accustomed manner, went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their allowance of bread and water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him; Dread King, mercy; for this Night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to Prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and

and said: O King, a greater mischief then this is likewise hapned this night, for the Christian Woman whom you have kept so many years, is this night escaped away, and hath carryed along with her your sister *Clerimond*. *Ferragus* understanding these harsh tydings, all enraged, began to tear his hair, that he was as a Mad-man among his Barons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, he made them to pursue and follow them; so he betaking him to his Club, (quoth out the foremost.

He was a mighty man, who was in stature about thirteen foot in height. Being out of the Town, he calling his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass he met withal, but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not hear of them, for *Pacolet* by his Art was too subtle for *Ferragus*. At last, being tyred with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the Castle of Clerimond, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by Mahomet, that he would either find *Clerimond* and all her company, or else he would shake all Christendom, and so departed the Castle.

#### CHAP. XXXVII.

How King *Ferragus* assembled all his Men of War to take Revenge upon *Valentine* and his Sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitain*.

**W**hen *Ferragus* had long laboured, and could here no tydings of the Christians, & his Sister *Clerimond*, he was grieved, & in his fury sent for all his men of War, on every side, presently to assemble themselves to take Sea, and follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had spent many days, and effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and rested from their fruitless Toyl. Whilst *Ferragus* and his Forces were thus scotoring the flowing Seas, Valentine and *Orson* were entered the City of *Aquitain*: being there, they dissembled their Estate, and as Private Persons, Lodged in a House of a Burges of the Town. Valentine would



would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orson therewith would not agree; for he having a further reach of policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by small experience, that Women are unconstant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us only see and try how the Lady Fezon standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her constancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall right willingly agree hereto. Then Orson took upon him the habit of a Knight Errant, and entered the great Hall, taking Pacolet the dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took it to be Orson that thus demeaned himself; but after finding by his speech he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you service, in any manner you will employ me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered service, and will give you Salary enough to content you, in so much that if you will not depart my service before I give leave, I shall give you such riches, as all the stock you came from could never raise. Thanks great Duke (quod Orson) for your liberal heart, and I here vow ere I depart, to deserve your love and liberality.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay one Hundred and fifty Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of his preferment, and ever so carried him at Meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongst the rest, the fair Lady Fezon, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his Mother and the Lady Clerimond had taken up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole passage between him and the Duke; which when they heard, they much rejoiced thereat: but this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain, to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an Enemy. Ferragus according

to his purpose, suddenly arrived before Aquitain, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the Giant Knight had pitched his Pavillions, when that Orson became his vanquisher: by this means much hurt redounded unto the Country and Provinces therabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and over run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his men of War, and being thus put in a readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Pacolet, but these three were not known unto any at that time: where we will now leave them a little, to here what followeth.

#### C H A P. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitain was taken prisoner in the battel by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacolet.

The Duke of Aquitain calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens, that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battel the next morrow; so calling up all his Forces, and placing them in readiness, there hapned a bloody battel before the City of Aquitain, and many a brave Leader on both parts, there lost their lives. The Giant Ferragus himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto his Standard-bearer. The chief men slain in this battel, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, Baudumain, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony, the good Marshal, and Gloriam the hardy: all near about the Duke of Aquitain, and they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. This happening the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with enemies, so that none might come to succour him, yet in the midst of these dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and still cryed, Aquitain, Aquitain, my Noble hearts, fight on for Aquitain: but in the end all little availed, Ferragus having once gotten a sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and led him to his Pavillion. Ferragus having thus bestowed

bestowed the Duke, came up again to the Battle, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. Valentine and Orson seeing them thus to waver, came to us with all the speed they could, & cryed out unto them with aloud voice: Valiant Knights, and Men of Aquitain, Hew your selves Men, run not away in time of extremity; for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: be hardy and courageous once again, let us try the fortune of the day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces. & turned their forces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tidings was brought into the City that the Duke was taken prisoner, at which ill News the Lady Fezon lamented more than all the rest; saying with a heavy heart, shedding tears: Alas my Father! now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a dejected Orphan. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me; for if you were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side was not idle, for he had taken an Oath, that either he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his body amongst the rest. Pacolet the Magician and Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all buked, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put spurs to his horse, and ran violently thorow the Battle, and escaped: Orson and Pacolet being past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanging about their necks the shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the Image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite thorow the Camp of the Pagans. (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pavilion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him; But Pacolet perceiving the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms, into a deadly sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke, & said unto him: Come with us, & presently

presently mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of Ferragus; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight, which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me Liberty. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your guide through the delicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed hands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprise, in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter Fezon in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I have given her not long since, to a Knight, but he was wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his tongue, but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy Noble act, and with her I freely give the half of my Dukedom. Thanks (quoth the Knight) such a gift is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto our discomfited forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again thorow the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tidings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the conflict of the battel.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place, to find out his brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the Battel, and as a man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him; Ferragus espying him so Valiant, come up to close him, and having gotten him once in Chase, never left him, until he had slain his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his horse, Ferragus seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he should not escape from Death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole Land; but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Prisoner Valentine fast bound along the field, Orson, Pacolet, & the Duke of Aquitaine set upon him. Orson crying out, Let him not escape us; and there-withal put spurs to his horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan Ferragus, that both he and Valentine his Prisoner, fell to the earth.

the Giant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orson spying him, cryed out, Brother, return again, and fear nothing: hereupon Valentine was new mounted: when the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cryed out aloud; Long live the Duke of Aquitain. This sudden noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee, and raise his siege: When the men of Aquitain heard the retreat, they recovered themselves again into the City. The Battell being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orson went along with the Duke to his Palace, whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter Fezon; being all assembled, he called Orson unto him, demanding of him his Name? Sir, quoth he, I am called Gregory: Then said the Duke thus before them all; Lords, I give you to understand, that above all men living, I am most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter Fezon, it is my pleasure, that above all men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming, that she should do no less than to submit to her fathers Will, and the rather, considering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: Orson hearing all this, still concealed himself till he had further assayed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon; acquainting his Brother Valentine what he purposed to do, as ensueth in this next Chapter.

### CHAP. XXXIX.

How Orson tryed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.

Orson having a desire to try the Constancy of Fezon, at last replied thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards

wards me, and likewise sit for her to make choice of such a man as is of equal birth with hers, & therefore if it please you, let her answer for her self. With these words he entred into the Chamber of fair Fezon, and sitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and said unto her: Lady, your beauty hath so enlarged my heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate man: Your Father is willing that I shall enjoy you, if you please so also, then may I justly haue, that I have toon the fairest Lady living; and will prove a constant Knight whilst I have breath; if you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost: it is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good men too, in the rule of honour, but as for him whom I mean to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? but fair Lady (quoth Orson) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you: Sir (said she) it is reason that I obey my Father, but if so be that my Father will constrain me to break my faith, and forsake him that vanquished the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my faith. Lady (quoth Orson) I wonder how you can set your affections on such a man, for he is of a wild nature and disposition; besides, as your Father reporteth, is dumb and cannot speak a word: True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom faith is already fixed; and therefore stay your Suit, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyal, to hear the wise Answer of Fezon, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke, saying; Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying; that she will never have other Husband than he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for she shall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient this day, & I will talk with her my self. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole matter of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon. Brother (said Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured the Duke

Will giue me good Entertainment. Sir (said Orson) do as you please: Valentine clad himself in rich apparel, & Orson put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into Aquitain; & thus, accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her, Daughter, what moueth you to neglect my command thus, in respecting the Knight, of whose love I have made sufficient tryal, for he hath saved my life? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to sollicite me no further in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the Green Knight: what greater shame can there be, than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espied Valentine and Orson coming towards him, whom he embraced & honourably entreated. Orson having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady Fezon, who received him with a smiling countenance, and said thus unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orson) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, & am the very same Man that yesterday Courted you in your Chamber: all which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So Orson went into a Chamber, and put on rich apparel: being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and said: Son, pardon my rashness, in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully perswaded that thou wouldst neber have returned. Sir (quoth Orson) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had spent their time, since their departure? Orson told him their whole Progress, and what dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperour of Constantinople, and Bellissant, Sister to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their descent was of Royal Blood, was right glad thereof, & said: Knights, you are worthy all honour by reason of your Birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperour, & your Uncle King Pepin, are so hardily besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedily

aid

aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield themselves. Valentine giving good ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding sad, but Pacolet at last put him somewhat out of his dumps, and said: Leave off your sorrowing, for ere to morrow night I shall send you to Constantinople; but, quoth Valentine, it must be then by the Devils means. Sir, said Pacolet, mount you upon my Wooden Horse, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine answered, that will I do, for I desire nothing so much as the sight of my Father, whom I never saw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: but before his departure the Duke married his Daughter unto Orson, in the presence of the Lady Bellissant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the consent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: and in this assembly there was a Spy, who observed all the Proceedings, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received these tidings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but especially on Pacolet, for stealing away his Sister Clerimond, whom he so much loved, and had ranked her among the Christians.

## CHAP. XL.

How Ferragus the Gyant strengthened his Forces by the aid of King Trompart, and the Enchanter Adrimain.

Ferragus being out of hope to get revenge on the two Knights, & his sister Clerimond called unto him a Messenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, especially one of them was to King Trompart, of whom he desired aid against his Enemies, all which, if he could speedily accomplish, he would give unto him for his wife, his sister Clerimond. At the farewell of his Letter, he desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimain. Here leave we the Gyant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leave for Constantinople. But in the end, he said thus unto the Duke, and Orson his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely Clerimond, Valentine (quoth the Duke) take you no thought for her, for I shall have a fatherly eye over her, as well as I have over my Daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to Clerimond, who loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his brother Orson, said thus; Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperour and to my Uncle King Pepin, and tell them e're long I will visit them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall remember you, and so departed. Orson still remained in the Palace, but Valentine had a duty yet more to do; namely, to take his leave of his Mother; but when she saw him, she clasped him round with her Arms, but was not able to speak: Valentine perceiving her natural affection, recomforted her in the best manner he could, but all was in vain.

## C H A P. XLI.

Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, before his farewel into *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.

**V**Alentine being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her: O Mother, leave off, be not so careful for me, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again, in the mean space take care of my fair Clerimond, & let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been falsely abused, and falsely banished my husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperour, and also to my brother King Pepin, and say unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted Chastity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall perform, and e're many months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now he takes his last farewel of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet to bring tidings of all that had hapned.

Now taketh he his way to the Lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made ready his Wooden Horse, and mounting Valentine

Valentine behind him, turned the ~~Pin~~ the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that e're the morrow at noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night to the great Hall, where the Emperour accompanied with King Pepin, sat both at Supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperour and King Pepin, espied Valentine, and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperour; Great Emperour, behold here one of our own blood, a valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperour hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him and kissed him: The Green Knight was the first that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperour his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his foul fact, in banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blendinian, who well observed Pacolet, ever since he saw him in Portugal; and at last went he unto him demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady Beilsant: Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy & gladness was heard about the City for the life of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperours son, the valiant Knight. Valentine seeing such continual recourse of all estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yield unto you any other recompence but thanks, and especially unto my Uncle King Pepin, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished by reason of a Murther published by my Father, who, by the false suggestion of a dead Traitor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country: wherefore to clear her innocence, I (as her natural Son) offer my body in Combat against any false Traytor whatsoever.



## CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the battle of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin*. & his men.

When the Emperour perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Emperess, he wept for very grief of heart, and said thus unto his son: Alas my son, I have no doubt of thee to be my son, neiter of thy manhood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant in the presence of thy Uncle *Pepin*, my self, and divers others of high estate. At his death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers & sundry messengers into all Nations, to hear tydings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: therefore I pray thee, if thou canst, tell me some glad tydings of her. Father (quoth *Valentine*) I know somewhat, for yester-night I both saw her, & spake with her in *Aquitain*; telling him besides, that *Pacolet* the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather then good speed. The Emperour hearing such gladson news from his son, caused great Triumphs throughout the City of *Constantinople*. When the Sarazens heard such shouts and rebelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a readyness. The Souldan round begirt *Constantinople*, famishing up all the Inhabitantes most lamentable to behold. At last these tydings came to the Ears of *Valentine* and the Green Knight, who arming themselves, came into the City, & said, Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet courageous and stand to it, and there is hopes of recovery, wherefore follow my counsel, I'llue forth some number of you to forrage for some victuals, whilst I, accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the Sarazens. They did as he advised them, & within short time they behaved themselves so ballantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of victuals. Having thus seized the victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Souldan soze vexed at his losses, got between the City & them, thinking to have defeated them from

from entrance, but King *Pepin* espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passage, presently couched his Spear, and ran upon the Souldan so violently, that he bare the proud Pagan to the earth, then pulling out his Sword at one Archillon, a very ballant Commander, with such fury, that he struck him out of his Saddle. *Valentine* and the Green Knight perceiving the great courage of King *Pepin*, & what fortune he had in the field, at that present entered freshly into the Battel, and with a resolute courage, even in the presence of the Souldan, he hewed down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrowen, *Valentine* addressed him against the Souldan himself, and with his spear he so encountered him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his horse. *Moraldas*, one of the chief Commanders was slain, and his Admiral taken prisoner by the Green Knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But mark what follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their



uncertain:

uncertain Victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he bowed by his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green Knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of Victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountered by the Sarazens Army: in which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth. ~~Men, Women,~~ Priests, Clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw these multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their Prey of Victuals, & safely conveyed it into the City, although with loss of many life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his Warlike men, especially for his Son Valentine and the Green Knight; most heavy and sad also was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Persons take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green Knight, than you can imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir (said he) shortly you shall make tryal of my love and respect towards you: so he betook him to his Wooden horse, and departed towards the Souldans Host, and came thither just at the instant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Green Knight to death: and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

C H A P.

## CHAP. XLIII.

How Pacolet by Enchantment, delivered Valentine and the Green Knight, out of the bondage of the Souldan; and how Pacolet couzened the Souldan when he had him upon his horse, and instead of carrying him to Portugal, brought him into Constantinople, where he was hanged.

After being assembled as aforesaid, the Souldan began thus to speak: Lords, here I present before you these that most incurber the mighty Giant Ferragus, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion, and for that cause my judgment is, that he be sent to Ferragus, and from him receive punishment fitting his offence: Nay, said the other Sarazens, let us never do so, but let them both here suffer death to morrow morn. Lords, quoth the Souldan, let it be so. These resolutions thus agreed upon, the Souldan entered his Pabillion to supper, where being set, Pacolet came and saluted him in the name of Mahomet: Pacolet (quoth the Souldan) thou art welcome, how farest Ferragus my dear friend? Sir (said Pacolet) right well, and by me sends glad some tidings if you please to hear them. Right gladly, said the Souldan, I pray thee begin; then Pacolet drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said; Sir, know this, I am lately come out of Portugal, and sent by the fair wife of Ferragus; whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed these her affections, but having no power longer to keep close the closet of her breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, so that no opportunity would be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight; Pacolet, thou hast more gladdened my heart, than all the worldly Treasure can afford; true it is, she is the onely Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my Wishes: The Souldan caused Pacolet to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed; Valentine and the Green Knight you must conceive, were both in the Pabillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of Pacolet, but durst not make any move thereof;

& Pacolet on the other side shewed himself a flatterer to the Soldan, in eating, drinking, and rebelling at the Soldan's Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Soldan, in hearing of all; Sir, how dare you venture your Noble person so near to this Green Knight, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living he is most dangerous; first, for the wrongs that he hath committed against his brother Ferragus, bereaving him of Clerimond, and giving her in marriage to a Christian Knight; next he hath renounced his Mahomet: these things considered, it is fit that he should dye, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Soldan) to morrow morning they shall both be hanged. Then the Soldan commanded the prisoners to be strongly guarded upon pain of death, and so withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valentine and the Green Knight under the conduct of those that most desired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine, and the Green Knight, and first freed them of their bands, and by art so charmed all their Warders (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty about the dawning of the day he came to the Soldan's Tent, crying out so loud to him, that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to say unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the wife of Ferragus, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one hours sleep: whereunto the Soldan replied, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful dream, & thus it was; Methought a Crow did hear me swiftly through the air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with his Bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in abundance; now this dream maketh me much to fear that Ferragus hath some intelligence of my desires, & means to revenge himself upon me. Away Sir (quoth Pacolet) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the love of such a beautiful Lady: by Mahomet (quoth the Soldan) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this charge: Sirrah be secret, if my Uncle Bryan ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with Pacolet. Then Pacolet took the Soldan behind him upon his Wooden Horse, and turning the rein, the horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little space they were come to Constantinople, even in the Emperors Place:

The

The Soldan perceiving Pacolet's horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journeys end? Wea, and fear nothing, for we are now in Portugal, in the Palace of King Ferragus. By Mahomet (said the Soldan) the Devil hath done his here very quickly. Well (said Pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her Bed. So so, quoth the Soldan, for I am even well near ravished with joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Now attendeth the Soldan in the Hall, attending the coming back of Pacolet, while in the mean space, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperour lay; being come to the Door, he gave a great blow against it; inasmuch that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperours rest? Friend, quoth Pacolet, fear not, for I am Pacolet, newly come from the Soldan's Host, where I have set at liberty, both Valentine and the Green Knight, who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperour, that I have brought along with me the Soldan himself to be in Portugal: wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Chamberlain told the Emperour all these tidings, and King Pepin also; so arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the Soldan sat: The Soldan perceiving himself betrayed, cried out with a loud voice: Thou false Pacolet, Traytor to my person, I now to be revenged upon thee, for thy disloyal practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a mad-man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to rise from those senseless Walls: As he was in this maddening fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The Soldan espying them, defended himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon King Pepin: this Act of his fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, and felled him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Soldan there in hands, were very joyful.

The Emperour and the King seeing Valentine, were joyful for his Deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over

his Son, and withal said, pacolet, one strain more of thy horse must I demand; you shall Sir (quoth pacolet) and if you will get behind me, I shall instantly transport you into Hell. But Lords, let that pass, and return unto the death of the Soldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of miseries will follow: so that very hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very sight of all his Pagan Host.

This done, the Pagans stood as men confounded and amazed, to see him there hanging, and wondered how he came within the City; but at last Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Soldan, they gathered themselves to counsel, and in his stead chose his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all these things done, pacolet took his leave of the Emperour, and returned into Aquitain to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promised: but before his departure, Valentine came unto him, and said: pacolet at your coming into Aquitain, salute from me my Mother Bellisant, and my loving Lady Clerimond my brother Orson, and the good Duke of Aquitain, with the rest of his Nobles; and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here, Sir, said pacolet, all this shall I willingly perform: so taking his horse, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the Air as swift as smoke.

The next morning pacolet was come to his journey's end, and finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Empress Bellisant, Orson, and Clerimond, all in safety, he saluted them all, and delivered them Letters, who said; Lady, your Son Valentine greeteth you well, shewing you, that the Emperour would gladly see you, confessing his rash credit given to a Traytor, about your banishment, who hath requited it with the loss of his life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the IncurSIONS of the Sarazens to come himself in person, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom Orson vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful tidings suddenly fell in a swoon, but Orson perceiving it, suddenly snatched her up in his arms and being somewhat come to her self, she said: My child, I am justly overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved innocent of such abominable crimes, as I

was

was falsely accused of: but I long to see the Emperour, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not longer desire to live, for I am well enough revenged; and my Accuser hath justly satisfied most Griefful death for his Treachery.

## CHAP. XLIV.

How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet, and how the King of Inde caused King Trompart's head to be struck off: and how he would have married with Clerimond; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain in the shape of a Woman: and how Ferragus was slain, and how Orson and the Duke went with their Army to Constantinople, to succour the Emperour: & how Orson led along with him his mother: & how all the Pagans were slain before Constant. and how the Emperour received his Son Orson, and his Wife Bellisant with joy.

Pacolet being arrived in Aquitain, at the same time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus against the Christians, at whose coming Ferragus began thus to salute him; Famous King, of your coming I am glad, hoping by your assistance to get back my sister Clerimond, and to be revenged on all those that have detained her. Ferragus (said K. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimain the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle King. I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get pacolet into my hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth Adrimain) put your trust in me, and so taking his leave, betook him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest, he laded himself with victuals, and took his way towards Aquitain; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to sell his victuals which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on pacolet, whom pacolet knew well. Adrimain, quoth pacolet, you are welcome, from whence come you, & what is your errand? Then said Adrimain, you know that long I served King Trompart, yet

he

by fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: now fearing death I am expelled the Court, and for this cause I fled towards you for succour, and will prove unto you a faithful servant, so be pleased to accept of me. Adrimain said Pacolet, I am content, let it be so, make thee good Cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, Adrimain saw the fair Clerimond pass through the Hall; who presently demanded what Lady it was: Then, said Pacolet, it is the sister of Ferragus, who must be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilst they were thus in conference, came Orson unto them, and said: Gentlemen, I could gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose words, Adrimain drew up a Cup above a Pillar in such wise, that through the Palace (seemingly to all the company) ran a River furnished with all sorts of Fish, little and great: when the Beholders saw the water to come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of drowning. Pacolet beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a song, and in that song a charm, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a Hart ran thorow that River, overturning all things that stood in his way. After this hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the beholders leap after, thinking to have taken the Hart: but Pacolet by his art, made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport, quoth Orson was very well performed; and so the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his chamber, to be with him, but proved fatal, for towards midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the Court, & with them Pacolet, that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterwards he went towards the house of Pacolet, and getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, & setting her on the horse behind him, came unto a window, turned a Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cried out aloud, saying: Great King sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady Clerimond, whom I have stolen from Aquitain, and with her Pacolet's horse. Now said the King, I well perceive thy love: is this the sister of Ferragus? Yea, said Adrimain, and I have stolen her away, and also betrayed Pacolet my

fellow

fellow Magician for he shall never be Master of his horse again: I but (said the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horse? A long since, worthy King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto the King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horse himself and taking Clerimond behind him, would transport her into his own country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms, (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep) & set her on the horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witness of, and said thus unto him: my Lord if you fall one jot of the true use of the horse, both your self and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that (quoth Trompart) and so turning the Pin, he mounted swiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way but not at his journey's end, for now awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her enchanted sleep, who seeing her self so deluded, fell suddenly into a swoon: this chance struck to the heart of K. Trompart, for he was afraid lest she had been dead, & so turning the Pin, he stopped the horse in a fair green field by a Fountain, then taking the Lady from the horse, he laid her on the grass, and took a little water and cast it on her face, and the Lady recovering, made such grievous lamentations, that K. Trompart was well nigh out of his wits; within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King Trompart required somewhat to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come again unto her speech, she weeping, uttered these words: Unhappy I above all Creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed Treason. Alas Valentine my Love, cursed be he that hath separated us. Trompart hearing her so clamorous, reproved her roundly, saying: Lady leavz off these foolish words of the Christian Boy, or else I shall separate thy head from thy body; is it not better for thee to be my wife, than am sole Lord of all this Jurisdiction, than to have a hegerly start-up, that hath neither Land nor Living; and with these words he would have killed her, but the Lady disdainning him, hit him with her fist upon the Mouth.

This strange and unlookt for disdainfulness, put King Trompart in such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and

set



set her upon the horse again: & turning the win the contrary way, presently, instead of carrying her into her own Country, he lighted in Indie, in the midst of a Market-place, kept there that day: the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady Clerimond by this time, knew the horse to be pacolet's, and said: Now am I falsely betrayed, and pacolet robbed of his horse; but my dear Valentine, he it is most sticketh at my heart, for now shall I never see thee more. Trompart (thought for all this, that he had been in his own country) still beating down her piteous laments with bitter words. But mark what followed: tidings was brought to the King of Indie, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for King Trompart, for the King of India knew him well. King Trompart being come before the King of Indie, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee, and so caused his head to be smitten off. After, the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he sat in his own person, and he thus said: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your face, it hath enthrall'd my heart; wherefore if so you please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious Continent. Sir (quoth she) you speak graciously, but to take any man to husband, I have made a solemn Vow to refrain during the space of one whole year, whereof I please it you to let my Vow be accomplished, and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said, perform thy vow, and remain within my Palace; & he commanded that her attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of State, into which Chamber she caused to be brought the Wooden horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest place she could devise, and still desired she might be forced out of that danger. Now leave we her a while, and return to pacolet, and look back also to Aquitain, and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The Night after Adrimain had betrayed pacolet, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the city of Aquitain. Moreover, when pacolet found Adrimain absent, he doubted no more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the horse

stood

stood, he suddenly missed it: all this so falling out, pacolet fell into a most grievous passion, inasmuch, as had not Orson at that instant come in, - he would have destroyed himself.

Pacolet being thus rescued by Orson, and beholding the general sorrow for the beautiful Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not grieve over till I am revenged on that Traytor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant Maid, and took his way to the host of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many pagans prayed for her love; but evermore pacolet excused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter Adrimain, and so they let her pass on. At last pacolet came to the Tent where Adrimain was: at which Adrimain stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in love, that that night he retained him into his Chamber; but pacolet no whit to seek of his gifts, made somewhat squeamish, and said: My Lord, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think it best the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth Adrimain) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good stomach to thee, and will use thee well: Now he committed the Maiden to one of his servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the Tent of Ferragus, pacolet demanded of the servant of Adrimain, what was become of King Trompart: the servant said, I think he is returned again into his own country, & carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a horse of wood that my Master had given him. pacolet hearing of this, was her'd at the heart. By this time was Adrimain, come unto his tent, saying to pacolet daughter is it time to go to rest: see here is the bed we mean to sport in: Your will be done, said pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: pacolet so enchanted him, in so strong a sleep, that awake he could not till the morning. As he dealt with Adrimain, so he did with all round about him; and putting off his Romans attire, he clad himself in all the richest Cloaths that Adrimain had; and after, with his own sword cut off his head, and bare it away with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there

there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy sleep. This done, he entered the Tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leap out of his bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his Circle, made him turn by his side like a Spannel, till he came even to the very entrance of the Gates of Aquitain.

When Pacolet was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons; and stopping Pacolet, they said unto him, Where is Clerimond, that thou bringest not her again? he answered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on Adri-  
m. id, for here I have brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I have also surprized, as you may see. Then said Orson you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet I have to say, which is, I have enchanted asleep the whole host of Ferragus, therefore if ever you mean to have a resistless Victory, go now. What say you? my Lords, quoth Orson, methinks Pacolet hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: so they slaughtered all that lay before them, and put Ferragus into a most filthy, dark, and loathsome Prison, until he should return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitain, and there commanded to have the Giant Ferragus brought before him who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: Ferragus if thou wilt here forsake thy Mahomet, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live, which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely die. Know said Ferragus, I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: so he was suddenly beheaded. After his death, Orson took leave of the Duke, and went towards Constantinople to aid his father the Grecian Emperour, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, against the unbelieving Sarazens, that had strangely besieged that City; but a little before his departing, the Duke said unto him, O worthy Knight, although you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; Orson was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks, so taking some small time to set things in a readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way the emperours Belly-lane, much lamented the hard usage of her Lord: but Orson pitying her, said: Mother,

leave

leave off your Tears, and only say, in that you have been falsely accused, which now will much increase your Honour: But I fear not your entrance into the City, which as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay, said Pacolet, fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and myself will go before and tell them so; Do so, said Orson, and tell Valentine the hard Fortune of Clerimond: Nay, quoth Pacolet, not I, I will be no bearer of such sad tidings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperour being strongly besieged, were in great distress for Victuals within the City, & there was no way to be relieved but by the sword. Then Valentine knowing their great necessity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy Band of Soldiers issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon two Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same, with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt round about: On the one side with the Soldan, & the other side with the King of Arabia, and thirdly with a King called Afficion. Amongst these Compa-  
nions fell out a terrible bloody Conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Dramagen, and the King Clarian. The Green Knight also behaved himself gallantly, for at one blow he struck off the Shield Arm of the King of Morien, and before that shew his brother. But all this valour little availed, for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan: who having them in his possession, assembled 15 Pagan Knights to adjudge them to Death, Valentine being thus in Bonds, greatly lamented the state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate, said, Let us dye in a good cause, and welcome Death.

Now was the Soldan set in his Chair of State, to pronounce Judgment: in the mean space in comes Pacolet, in the midst of the throng not known of any, and come and stood before the Judgment Seat, and kneeling down, said: Right dear Sir, know I am a Messenger from your brother Godart, the great King of Argier, who to your succour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, & his requirer on which side of your Army they shall be ranked. A-

11 2

gain,

gain, he prays you, if you have any Christian prisoners, to send them him, & he will send them into his own Country, to draw the Plow, and here stands a couple of six instruments for that purpose. The Soldan rejoiced at these tidings, & commanded he should be highly feasted for that night: mean time Valentine and the Green Knight were glad of pacolets company. In the dead time of the night pacolet went unto them, and giving to each of them a horse, unbound them, and had them follow him. Being out of the enemies reach, pacolet said thus unto them: Lords, be comforted, for in this land is assembled the Duke of Aquitain, & the Knight Orson, the noble Empress, and the Lady Fezon: I, but said Valentine, why cometh not the fair Clerimond? Then answered pacolet, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, she was forced to return again to Aquitain: So Valentine for that time questioned no farther with him.

Then pacolet advised them all to go into the City of Constantinople, and on the morrow issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean space I will on the other side so beset my self, that the host of the Malarkie Duke shall come up, and give a fresh assault. Now the Soldan seeing this, shall imagine it to be his Brother, the King Argier.

Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected. Thus they departed; pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the host of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orson answered, pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we assault the host of the Sarazens on the one side, & they of Constantinople on the other, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and so kept themselves that night.

The next morning the Emperor & King pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their host into five battles. The first was delivered to Valentine, the second to the Green Knight, the third to King pepin, the fourth to Millan Dangler, and the fifth to Sampson of Orleance, one that bear in his banner a bear of silver: At the break of day, these powers issued out of the City to

to give an assault upon the Enemy: being come into the field, they sounded their instruments, the noise wherof so assaighned the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying an allarum, an allarum. This battel was extre'm hot for the Christians that day, yet the enemy had no cause to boast. King pepin behaved himself so bravely, and cryed out to his Souldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. Then a Sarazen cryed out to the Soldan to retire, for the safeguard of their lives, for this night have we lost our two Prisoners, & also there is coming against us, a new supply of a great army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, and roused up their courage doubly, insomuch that they enforced the Christians to fall back, but little abated their pride; for there came upon them the Duke of Aquitain, with his forces, and assaulted them so fiercely, that they put to the sword all that did come before them, and thus the Christians conquered.

When the battel was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered forces, Valentine and Orson came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful reverence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my brother Orson, whom as yet you never knew. Then the Emperor embraced him with tears, and so did the worthy King pepin also. False Son (said the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperor, King pepin, Valentine, Orson, the Green Knight, Blandiman, & Guidard the Merchant, he that banquished the false Arch-Bishop. All these with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the noble Empress Bellissant, and the Lady Fezon.

By this time they are come: When the Emperor saw his Wife Bellissant he leapt off his horse & in tears and sighs not being able to speak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring Pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to see the man that robbed my innocency with his sword. Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your honour was preserved. Sir, quoth the Lady you ought to be regarded for

your Service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during life. Then, said Valentine, Mother I pray tell me some Tidings of Clerimond. Fair Son, Clerimond hath been stolen from Aquitain, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, lookt strangely upon Pacolet, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but Pacolet entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stolen my horse away, but I am revenged on him by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, grew into bitter Passions for his loss.

## C H A P. XLV.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from Greece, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* falsely of Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of France) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the Dragon, caused the K. of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*: And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by King *Brandisser* his Wifes Father; and how the Emperor of Greece and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by *Brandisser*.

These Wars thus ended, King *Pepin* took his leave of the Emperor and returned into France. *Orson* would needs go along with his Uncle *Pepin*, and spend the remainder of his days in his service: the King was content. and said unto him, I will make you High Constable of France; moreover, if it so chance that my young Son *Charles* should decease before me, I will make you K. of France. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady *Fezon*: the day of taking leave

came,

came, and each embraced other with kisses and tears: But *Valentine* could not rest, for he had lost his love, wherefore I am resolved to seek my love, for whom I endangered my life, and for my friend I won her: her I bewail, & her will I seek again if she be alive but if I find her not, short and woful will be my days; and so he called *Pacolet* to him, & said; wilt thou serve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task? Sir, quoth he, willingly, and am ready whentsoever you shall see fit to go. Then *Valentine* made all things in readiness for his departure, and now hath taken Sea and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three Attendants. Now leave we him, and speak of K. *Pepin*, who by this time is seated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant *Orson* was highly esteemed, insomuch that he had even all the command of the Kingdom delivered over unto him. It thought was to be brought before the King, *Orson* was the man to be sued unto.

This Greatness of *Orson* fretted *Haufray* and *Henry* (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, insomuch that they plotted a means how to take away his life, saying, it was much to their indignity, that *Orson* should be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, says the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow. *Haufray* (said *Haufray*) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our elder Sister, to wit, *Florence* and *Garnier*, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on foot again, they are fit Members to execute any Will: for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: now either of these may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his Bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to *Orson*s charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Person: If this can be effected, *Orson* will surely be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly left into our hands. In this it is necessary to use secrecy. Upon this resolution they sent for these two Instruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treason, and being come, *Haufray* said unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and raise you to Honour; which thing we chose rather to offer unto you, for that you are allied unto us, and therefore we respect you before others. Thus it is, you know our Father, the King never loved

us



us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us highly regarded: these things considered, my Brother, I, and you two brothers, descended from our Uncle, determined to put our doing Father to death, and so we may share the Land into our own Government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, & I think you, Garnier, to be the fittest so: it, because you being usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your self behind some Arras, and when the King is in bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fault will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, & so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death; and as for little Charles, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a Night, when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entered into the Kings Chamber, and hid himself behind the hangings. When the hour of the Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard and Chamberlain, as the manner was. The King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise, left him, & laid himself down upon a Palat by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, whereupon Garnier assayed, (having the Knife ready) this bloody Enterprize: but being come to the bed-side, ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal stroke, he thought the King would awaken, and so trembling for fear, laid him down by the bed-side, and durst not stir: Anon, he would adventure again, but being (as before) possessed with fear, he put the knife within the bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all the while slept soundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: Also he thought that besides a Ribber he saw two Herons that fought with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended her self so ballantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream Orson awakes, and was much astonished thereat, saying, the Gods preserve my brother Valentine from Treasons.

By

By this time the day broke, and Orson softly stole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier saw Orson gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the news: Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done: Lords (said Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in France, & yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, fear and horrour did affright me, that I durst no more adventure. But I have advised me of another Plot, & have of purpose left the knife in the Kings Bed, and this it is, we will accuse Orson of Treason, and tell the King, there are four Traytors, whereof Orson is the principal. Also they will make away little Charles; and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, that for this purpose Orson hath conveyed a Knife into the Kings Bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the door, heard all their conference. Garnier (said Haufray) you say well, but if Orson deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the worse, my Brother and I shall find men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the second time for Orson the innocent. The next day the King being at Dinner, attended by Haufray and Henry, who shewed good countenance to Orson: When Garnier saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many Kingly Favours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a Treason which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your Person, I will bewray unto you the practisers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orson first, for he was the principal Traytor; the number in all are four, Orson was the man should kill you in your Bed with a Knife; and that your Majesty may the better Credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place and heard Orson say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your Bed; now if it please you either to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said Florent) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words, beheld Orson with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and villainous man, can such a thought enter into the breast, as to take away the life of him I have



I have more respected than my own Children! Usage (quoth Orson) be not lightly taken away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove evn by the Authoꝝ of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will crave no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said Myllon Daugler) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that Orson is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: yea but (said the King) if we find a Knife in the Bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Wittnesse: and being there, they found the Knife, as Garnier said: Alas, said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own Kinsman seeketh my life? but I bow he shall suffer a shamefull death. With that a vallant Knight, named Simon, came to Orson, (which loved him well) and said: Alas Sir, spee and save your life, for the King hath found the Knife in his Bed, and so the King hath bowed your death. Orson said: I fear nothing. The King entred the Hall where Orson was, guarded with fifty one Knights, and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment.

Orson being brought before the King and his Lords, he said unto them: Alas Sirs, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the custome of your Country, which is, that when a man shall be accused of Murther or Treason, he might crave a Combate against his Enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my self innocent, which I will maintaine, if by your Counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further, to clear my self, I here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. Garnier said: Orson, I thinke you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the field. Ah Traytoꝝ! there is nothing yet proved; but that a man that feareth not damnation, and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Peers of France caused Orson to be removed out of the place, and also the Brothers his adherentes, while in the mean space the rest disputed the question. At last it was adjudged that Orsons demand was reasonable,

sonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the King: then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederate with him in the Kings death: No more (quoth he) I will not betray them for all the wealth in France: Garnier (said the Judge) I give Sentence, that you and your Brother take up Orsons Gage, and fight with him; for since you conceal the rest of these Murthers, it is to be doubted that there is malice in the Plot. Orson at this Sentence rejoiced, and took his Glove down to these two Traytoꝝ, saying: Lords, here is my Glove that I cast down to these two Traytoꝝ, upon this condition, that if my life be lost, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleasure: Kisse then, said the King, for judgment is past: and for your further security, it were good we had some Vantage: With that Haufray and Henry offered themselves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother: and for Orson stood Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampson. So a months day was assigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they should fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampson, Galeram, and Garvaies, brought forth Orson, for he was well beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he came through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entered the field with their two Nephews, Royally armed. Garnier and Floren, the two Traytoꝝ, greatly feared Orson, but Haufray and Henry did comforted them, promising them aid: Being thus in a readiness, the Bishop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them all this an Oath, according to the Law of Arms, and then the Bishop departed away. After came the Harquills and the Sergeants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided 3000 men hard by, and given them command, that as soon as they heard him blow his Horn, they should set forward towards him. This gladdened the Traytoꝝ at the heart, but it little abashed them, for as soon as the Trumpets signal gave, Orson couched his Spear, and putting his Spurs to his horse, ran upon them with fury, and lent Garnier such a stroke, that he ran through both the shield and Armour. Floren on the other side, gave Orson a blow, that he thought he had struck against a Tower: false and accursed Traytoꝝ (quoth Orson) thou hast wronged me, and accused me, & re this day past, I shall shew thee where thou shalt

rest : and with these words, he with his sword smote Garnier out of his Saddle, and withal pulled off his helmet, and had cut off his head, if his Brother Florent had not rescued him.

Again Orson made towards Garnier, and striking off his ear, said : Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain. He began a fresh Combat between these three Champions, Garnier having recovered again his helmet, came upon Orson with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that Encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus Orson had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and beside, they relied much upon the rescue of Haufcray & Henry, but still Orson followed, and at last so wounded Garnier, that he was faine to forsake his horse. Being on the ground, he smote at Orson's horse, insomuch that he cut of one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orson being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his shield, and threw him on the earth, but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orson, and gave such a stroke on the helmet, that he made him stagger : Orson bered hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his horse dead to the earth, and after took off his helmet. Florent was so ashamed hereat, that he ran up and down the field, covering his head with his shield, and Orson took pleasure in chaling him : say Florent (said his Brother) sit not, return, or we shall be vanquished, and herewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon Orson, and with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the strokes entered his Armour, & drew blood, Orson feeling himself wounded, smote off one of Florent's Arms : but yet he gave not over. Orson espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have struck at Garnier, but suddenly withdrawing his arm, he Florent in such wise, that he fell down dead to the earth, and after said unto Garnier, Traytor, thou shalt after, except thou confesse the Trayson. Not so, Orson, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death : Haufcray and Henry disliked the match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confesse the Treason and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said Haufcray) I will tell you what may be done, as soon as we perceive Garnier to be overcome, before

before he confesse any thing, we will enter the field, and make as if we come to cheer up Orson, we will cut off our Nephews head, and so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry, be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the field. Garnier (said Orson) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confesse the Treason, and I will save your life. Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair Promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an Ear, I little respect any place of Honour ; so rather chusing to dye valiantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orson) and with death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of thy life : and thus he makes at Garnier, and by strength of arms threw him under him, and pulled off his helmet, Haufcray seeing there was no way but one, cryed out, Orson slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such Justice upon him, as to so foul an Act appertaineth : and Haufcray said unto Garnier, Nephew confesse the Fact, & we will be a means unto the King for your pardon. Lord, said Garnier, I did put the knife into the Kings bed : in speaking these words, Haufcray drew out his sword, running him thorow, & after said, Lords, let this Traytor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved : but Cousin Orson, I am glad of your Victory, for it probeth you innocent : and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my blood. News coming to the Lady Rejon, she was glad of Orson's Victory ; King Pepin also came, saying, Nephew, you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle, quoth Orson, the Traytors are banquished, & Haufcray made Henry to confesse the Treason, & so killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufcray, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the Victory : Haufcray and Henry spake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and they had their desert, where we leave them, and return to Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond. Valentine having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find Clerimond, Pa-colet being with him, could speake their language, & took up their lodging in a great mans house, but the host of the house was somewhat doubtful,

doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would harken, insonmuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said, Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entred your Land without paying of Tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choise of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath deuoured many men: He is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Hawk, feathered like a Giffon, the Head of a Serpent, a groning within her mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red Scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon. (Quoth Valentine,) this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Mahometry, and become Christians: the King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it. Sir (quoth Valentine) let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastened a great number of long Spikes of Steel, a foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armour, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were faine to provide for the Dragon either the Carcass of a Man or of a Beast, which if they failed of none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return unto her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster; but if they had no Malefactors, then they went to the Sea-side, for to take up Chilians, if they happened to come on Shore, and they were brought to be deuoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon; she seeing one come towards her, closed her Wings most closely, casting out of her mouth smoke like fire. When he descended from his horse,



horse, and left his Harp axe at his Saddle-Bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have smitten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite Valentine, who subtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with Spikes) & so the Serpent broached her foot upon them, who feeling her self hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing back, and retolling, Valentine persued, but when the Serpent saw him approach, she rose on her feet, and thought to have beaten down Valentine with her fore feet under her, but fearing the shield, she ran back. The King beholding this, said, he ponder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reuerence for his hardnes. Also, the fair Queen Rozamond fell in Love with Valentine to see him so aduenturous.

Now grew the battel fierce and dangerous betwixt Valentine and the Dragon; but still she fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her play, in the one hand he bare his Shield, and the other his sword; wherewith he gave the serpent a marvellous blow under the eat, but with the blow he broke his sword. Valentine was in great danger when his sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry

that with her paw she rent his Armour quite through. Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a Knife, and struck it in her Throat, but she little regarded it: Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Axe at his Saddle-bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a blow with his Axe, that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she flew at Valentines head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in arms, got another helm and bare it to his Master; Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy ways, and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me. But for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine, and delivered the helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her paw, that he felt it through his Armour, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Axe cut off her Nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Maw, she flew to the top of a high Rock: Then went Valentine to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his head with his Shield, which the Dragon spying, returned again to the Rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines Helm and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some relief, for my health faileth: so they took leave, as soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine threw his Axe so right, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other wing; so that the battle was most violent between them, inso much that he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Axe, but leaving all, he got up into a Tree to rest his wearied Limbs, and the beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruel countenance, casting out of her mouth nothing but stinking vapours. Valentine being well refreshed came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran fiercely at him: Valentine still put the Shield before him, and with his Axe, smote

left thigh, wherewithal he fell to the earth. Valentine still pursued his strokes, and ran his Axe so far in her Throat, that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; Of all Knights thou art the most hardy, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us: Alas these words they entered the City, and so to the Palace, where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King called Valentine's Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his Wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King, Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receive Baptism if I overcome the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only. True (saith the King) and look what I promised, I will perform: and thereupon sent this present Christ throughout the Land, That every one should forsake Mahomet, and be Baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said, Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wisdom, Strength, and all Beatitudes belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love: O that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection: O, I could love thee beyond humane Reason, hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady, I thank you, but you have added a puissant King, and him only ought you to love and honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. Valentine seeing the Queen so eager, replied, Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till I return from my intended Journey to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many Women that are swayed of their Husbands, for the love of others; even so began this Queen to practise; for one night, as the Queen was going to Bed, a cup of Wine was brought unto her (as the custom was) wherein she had conspired



poysen, and after presented it unto the King: but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying; Lady, look what Drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her knees, craved pardon, and said, that Valentine procured her to do so. I do believe thee, quoth the King, and pardon thee: so they lay together that Night; but she still requested that Valentine might be put to death: He shall as sure as I live, quoth the King. She hearing the King say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her Maidens, sent to Valentine, to tell him her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: Valentine hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was innocent, said; What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a Traytor, or else lay her shame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea side, where lay a Ship full of Passengers, ready to put off; in amongst the rest goes he and his company; so hoisting Sails, they departed. On the morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them, Lords, I am most deceived in the man whom I most trusted, and he whom in heart I held dearest, hath betrayed me, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lateless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poysen me; therefore let us proceed to judge him some shameful death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron said; We have no reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was sent for, but instead of Valentine came his Boy, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the day from his house, but whether he knew not. The King hearing this, suddenly sent forth men to follow and pursue him, but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that the King of Antioch was converted, his wifes Father Brandisser, a Turk, had so great a spleen against the King, for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the King heard this unjust demand, he gain-said him, whereupon Brandisser came upon him with 100000 Pagans, and beleeged

beleeged his City. At last, within the compass of four Months, by Treason he obtained it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to death, and Crowned himself King of Antioch. At his death, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of Greece, newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight, with some other Company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandissers Soldiers, and having gotten them, hasted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have seized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The Men of Cretophe were very sorrowful for the loss of the Emperor and the Green Knight. At last they determined to send Letters unto Bellifant of what had hapned, and to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and Men of War, made preparation for a speedy revenge. Also she sent for her Son Orson, and escaped him of her Brother King Pipin. Being thus in readiness, they went to the succour of the Emperor; but Brandisser had sent abroad to give him notice of all that hapned, and fearing the loss of the Greeks, and their Prisoners loss, they stole to the sea-side, taking Ship, they in short time arrived in Lize, in which place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond and Galazy, who for her Beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings: Brandisser had yet no meaning to marry her, therefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a time: At the end of this Bridge stood a Serpent, which was the entry into this Castle. The Lady Galazy was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the Green Knight, with other Christians, which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave me them, and we shall hear you sometime of the Lady Clerimond, which still remained in Lize.



## C H A P. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*: And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy* wedded *Rosamond* the fair daughter of *Brandisser*; and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out Defiance; and of the answer he brought from the *Indian* King: and how *Rosamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the *Indian* King; and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandisser* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*, and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*.

**Y**OU have heard already of the death of King *Trompart*, who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolet's* horse: also how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no succour for her relief; which she had so long expected therefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her shifts, & to save her *Wailen-head*, she feigned her self very sick. This news came to the Kings Ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extremely sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his hand upon her head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his arm, and lift up her head her self, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereas.

After this she rowled her eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in such wise, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing least she should prove mad. In this manner she abode a long time, and she did, at the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast than a woman: she made all her Attendants for take her, for if she caught them, she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while she put her Smock uppermost, anon she bedawbed her face with Soot, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her disemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him,

him, but then she fell into a strange fit of madness: one while she would run against the Chimney, and then while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tryed for her recovery, yet none prevailed: so leave we her in her Chamber, & return to *Valentine*, who with an ardent desire is roved abroad, accompanied with *Pacolet*, to find out the Lady *Clerimond*. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady *Clerimond*, and now were they arrived in *Esclardy*, which was the Kingdom of *Trompart*, who carried away the Lady on *Pacolet's* horse. Being in the City, they asked for King *Trompart*, so they told him he was slain by the King of *Inde*, & that now at this present, *Lucar* his Son would revenge his death upon the King of *Inde*, & to that end he had newly mustered up his powers, and waged many Royal Kings to under take this War. Then speak *Pacolet*, who well understood the language, saying; Of what account is this King *Lucar*? for the host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of *Brandisser*, that was late Wife to the King of *Antioch*, who was slain by *Brandisser*, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale *Valentine* was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said; Know ye that what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* did bring with him? Of her we hear no tidings (quoth the host) tell me then where is King *Lucar* at this present, I would fain serve under him for wages, for my money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the wars. Harry, said the host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge host, attending *Brandisser* to receive his daughter in Wedlock. *Valentine* knowing all this, he hoped to hear of *Clerimond*; and so he departed, and came to *Esclardy*, to serve King *Lucar*.

*Lucar* being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandisser* with his daughter, at sight of whom King *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the hall, and there married unto King *Lucar*. *Valentine* was abroad, and entering a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a *Sarazen* would have ravished: *Valentine* still heard the cry, and said unto *Pacolet*; Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we shall do a Charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed.

oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted on a Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then Valentine said: My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your Arms, to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy Challenge, and will make thee know, that in an evil hour thou comest hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his Spear quite through the body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the Garden, saying: Damoisel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray thee tell me the cause why this man brought you into this Wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth, so it was, that yester-night late he came unto my Father's house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your Manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved; do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath Ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damoisel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong; return unto your house, and keep well your Chastity. So Valentine left the Garden, and took his way towards Escarday. This Pain Pagan had certain attendants, which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying: our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the Wood. The King was with great right heavy, and presently sent out a search, to see if they could find the Murderer. At last Valentine and his company were taken, bound, and beaten by the Kings Commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King, and said; Alas Sir, do this her no harm, for I know he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called Valentin of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of Antioch.

Antioch; make much of him, and retain him into your service, for his fellow lives not in the World. Lady (said the King) others times have I heard much talk of his prowess, and I have much desired to have a sight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and said; Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours. I receive into my pay: yet one thing still remaineth, that you must do for me, which is: That you go into Inde, and beseege the King thereof in my Name, telling him: that I am ready prepared to exchange the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me with a Cord about his Neck, ready to receive such Sentence as by me and my Barons shall be imposed upon him: If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly visit him and his Land with War, and not leave one Town or Village untroubled, nor spare the life of any. Sir (said Valentine) all this I shall gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond seeing Valentine ready to depart, entered into her Chamber, and by one of her Damoisels sent for him; when he came to her, he saluted her with great reverence, and she said to him: Knight, you are welcome, for I have a great desire to see you. So said a Lady (quoth Valentine) against a desire to see you, for since I saw you, I understand your husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady you know that for the love of you within Antioch I sustained much danger of life: 'Tis true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my self guilty; and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my Father bestowed me on King Lucar, who is such above measure; yet can I not longer bear, he is a perfidious Traitor; since you entered this Palace, he grew so jealous of you, that he sends you into Inde, trusting you shall never return, for never yet come any back again alive: But I will circumvent him, and let you free from danger. Therefore know this, that not long ago the King of Inde requested me for his Wife, and the truth is, I loved him better than this Traitor, but my Father crossed me in it: now this King of Inde is token of Love, sent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any save your self; but seeing I perceive the malice of Lucar towards you, I will give you that which shall defend you from Danger, and make you return a Victorious Knight;

Knight; and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the King of Inde, this shall you do.

After reverence made, & salutations from King Lucar, next greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father hath given me to King Lucar, yet his love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also, that when King Lucar bringeth his host, I will come with him, and then if there be any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this King. Lady (quoth Valentine) for your care, love, and good will towards me, I humbly thank you, & have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of Inde, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to King Lucar, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lieth between Escardy & Inde, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the King of Inde. Then Valentine being arrived, he drew forth his horse out of the Ship, and backed him, and said unto the Mariners: Abide here till my return, for it shall not be long ere I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest: If thou return the Devil must bring thee, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again. Valentine overheard this muttering speech, but made no answer; so he took his way to the Citie: And when he was near the Palace he alighted off his horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a winkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King Lucar, and thereof said aloud unto him: Art thou not a Servant of King Lucars? Sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such tidings as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, that your very soul will leap to hear it, from the fair Rozamond Messenger, know this, that in the spite of King Lucar thou shouldst have suffered death, but for the love & reverence I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receive no injuries, if so it be, the

thou canst shew me some Token from her. Yes, said Valentine, that I shall shew you, and deliver my Message with such applause, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to King Lucar, you know, who by me sendeth these words, that for the death of his Father, you must come and yield to his mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a man guilty of so foul a Deed, to receive Sentence of Death according to your desert; If you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breathe defiance against you, and tell you that he will shortly come and lay waste your Land, and ransack your Dominions.

Messenger, I understand thee, & set light by these his bold threats: and for answer to this matter, thou shalt have letters wherein shall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, & also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall come to whip my Land: Therefore leave you these proud brags, & return to that thou hast to say concerning the fair Lady Rozamond, for I most of all desire to hear from her. Sir (said Valentine) on her behalf I salute you as her love, & she sendeth you word, that she is against her will married to King Lucar, whom she never loved again, the poor Lady is so burdened with love towards you, that if she might have her will, you should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but you, if you be so content.

Now to come yet somewhat nearer, she told me that she will come hither in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accomplish your desire even as you would: By Mahomer, says the Indian King, this pleaseth me extremely. Sir (said Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no, I cannot tell, but for token that all is true that I have said, receive here the Ring which you gave unto her, & though Alonien prove variable, yet methinks she speaks to you from her inward breast. Friend (quoth he) this is the same Ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repast, while in the mean time I get the Letter ready, thou shalt take with thee to answer this defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, & was highly refreshed, and he still demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in the Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still

desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations and hard Achievements, as you may afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great haste to be freed out of Inde, and taking horse, he came to the Haven where the Mariners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had done his Message: Masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, we much marvel thereof.

At these words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in Escardy. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he had descended his horse, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King Brandisser, and fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of King Lucar, against the Indian King. At the return of Valentine they wondered, for the King sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine come before them all, to tell what Tidings of his Message. Valentine began thus to say, He regards not all your Threats a straw; he is free and proud, and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This Letter being broken open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandisser understanding his Answer, Swore by all the Gods, that he would never return home again, but wish Misery, or loss of Life.

The next Morrow they betook them to the Seas, with an host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant field, before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself sat up into a high Tower to behold their order; so by the River-side he might espie their rich Habillions, gallantly furnished with Arms, and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Beralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. The first (quoth they) is Brandissers, the second is Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her Ladies. When the King understood that Rozamond was there, his heart leapt for joy, and

and said, It is no time to sleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, must venture Life and Goods, or else he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his men in Battel array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his Enemies, so that they were not in a readines for they little thought the Indian had been so fierce, but Love made him do it.

When the King saw Brandisser ordering his Men in Battel array he left his Companies, and with much diligence rode towards the Habillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was he, he gave all the rest of her company the slip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, & putting Spurs to his horse, she said, My love is fixed only on you, & for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated Man so much as I do King Lucar; but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewell, and I will keep my self only to thee so long as I live: Lady, quoth the Indian, forbear not, for I will not fail you, & here I vow, & it shall pass, you shall be Queen of Inde, & Mistress of all my Kingdom. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At last the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Habillion, and ran to the King, saying, My Lord, there is evil Tidings, for this day you have lost the Lady Rozamond; for the King of Inde your utter Enemy, hath stolen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore I earnestly send your Men of War to follow him, that they may save the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace, said Lucar, and talk no more, for he that hath an evil will, it is well if he can be rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to King Brandisser, and said, Sir, I have small joy of your daughter, who hath left me, to run away with a stranger, and one that is mine Enemy, leading me in reproach and shame. Faith Son (said Brandisser) be not discontent at me; for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her away, so putting Spurs to his horse, he followed him, gathering a great company of men. Amongst the rest, Valentine was one, willing to show his fidelity, who said unto Pacolet, now show me by thy art somewhat. Then Pacolet raised such a Charm which so astonished the Indian's Eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his horse, but talking Bachelors; and great Numbers. At this he was amazed, that he



made the Lady alight; when the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her life with the King; but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her; Lady, abide, for you must go with me. for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah, Valentine. I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me; wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield my self as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour; so he led her to King Lucar, and said unto him; Sir, here is the Lady Rozamond your Wife, whom the Indian Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for ever as the Battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, & without any further enquiry, mounted on his horse: being on horseback, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled & pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, & forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Knight escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done; and at this present we have no leisure to enquire further hereof: so he left the Lady, and returned to the Battel. They of Inde returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the loss of Rozamond. Alas, Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was surely Enchanted, & on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, & Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me: Valentine had great praise for getting again the Lady, & she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned for she hated him to death, & putting up this mischance she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her Will to Execution.

It is a common saying, Monien seldom want Deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond, for some four Years after, she rode forth of her Tent, pretending to take the Air, but took her way toward the King of Inde, and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did accord-

ing

ing to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head, and carried her into the City.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the Host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This madged Lucar at the heart, and gave out, that whosoever would recover her out of his hands should be made a great Seneschal: Sir (said pacolet) if you please to achieve dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back: Nay, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her husband but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her, and begat a Son called Rabestre, who afterward had the possession of Jerusalem. Lucar was right sorrowful for the loss of his Wife, but Brandiffer his Father comforted him, saying, Son, take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart, but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary tidings, which was, that King pepin of France, & the Emperor of Greece, was entered his Land, burning and spoiling many places, & were now upon the Siege of Angory, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must presently take a course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such woe as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son Lucar, and said, Son, here is evil tidings befallen, the French are entered my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Knight unto the Indian, to demand your Wife, upon this condition that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will raise your Siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the King of Inde, to declare this Message. He being come before him, said, Great King, I am come from King Lucar, who says, that if you will restore his Wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his Siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replied: If he will have a Wife, he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: Valentine having thus received this answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandiffer to stay with him, sent



sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under sail, Valentine espying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be. Then the Mariners described the Banner and fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the sight of King Pepins Tents, & Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces, found the number to be great: then said Valentine, Let us secretly send to the City to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their Language. Quoth Murgalant, go thy way; So Pacolet departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some Spy, wherefore they demanded of him, saying, Whither goes this fellow? he looks as if he were some Spy: 'tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt; therefore bring me into the Hoast of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him with. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right joyful, and said, How fares my Brother Valentine? Then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no tidings of Clerimond, & told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 10000 Pagans, under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these confines, by the command of King Lucar and King Brandisser, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans thore home. Ad. Orson, do as thou hast said, & win immortal praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said Pacolet I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine: but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you; sit stand you still upon your guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, while I cast a strong sleep on the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good, said Orson; so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprise, & Pacolet was royally entertained so that

that time: now Pacolet, to the end there should grow no mistrust, gave certain Signs to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admiral Burnas, and saluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandissers part were new arrived, 100000, and Murgalant sends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readiness, to assail the Christians on the other side the City, & Murgalant will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a Man of them escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these tidings, but he knew not how this should come to pass; Pacolet took his leave of him, and returned back again to Murgalant with salutations from the Admiral: so Murgalant gave him great thanks for his message, and Pacolet departed secretly to speak with Valentine. When he was come, he said thus unto him; Your Brother Orson and your Uncle King Pepin, greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, because I would have them well and ready prepared; but Pacolet would not let him know the Plot he had in hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto Valentine. The night is come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, so Valentine commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the Watch himself, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in the Tent. In the dead time of the night Pacolet went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a Charm, that they fell asleep. This opportunity was not let slip by King Pepin, for he with his Army entered the Hoast with 60000 fighting-men, and set fire amongst the Tents and Pavillions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay asleep in his Bed, and being suddenly affrighted, shipped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and so he fell down dead.

This assault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet said unto Valentine, seek to save your self, for the Christians have killed the watch, and entered the Hoast. Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast made me break my promise with Brandisser, for which I shall surely dye. Fear not, quoth Pacolet, for he shall do no harm. The morrow after Burnas issued out of Angory, and set upon Pepins Hoast, who knew not what had happened. The Battel grew both fierce and long: At last the

The Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Knight of Bay, struck him stark dead, after that, with his Sword he slew Gyrald of Paris: then came he against Robert of Normandy; and lopp off his Leg. At last King Pepin met with him, and couching his Spear, he ran him quite through: the Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians following them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls: but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the sword: within this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.

## C H A P. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard tidings of his Father, and how *Pacole* freed the *Indian* King, and left *Brandisser* in prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indi*, to be drawn to death at horses Tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacole* departed secretly out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the vision of King *pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-land with the twelve peers of *France*, and what happened. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father King *pepin*, and the twelve peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas* made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandisser*: And *Haufray*, to further his treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandisser*, and how he was trapped in his own Net.

**T**he City being taken by the Christians, *Valentine* finding the body of *Murgalant* in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain days sail, they arrived where *Lucar* & *Brandisser* were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King *Lucar* saw *Valentine*, he said: Knight, welcome home, how fareth & speedeth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst, and taken *pepin* and his Nephew *Orson*? Alas, said *Valentine*, it is falled out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For King *Farin* that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men sleep, and so the Christians came and made great havock, of our Army. As soon

soon as I got any tidings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle *Murgalant*, whose body I hope here brought. This spectacle fretted *Brandisser* at the heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board, & said: surely *Valentine* thou wert the cause of this. O *Valentine*, I return him the lie that says so, & I will maintain my innocency with my sword. *Pap* (said *K. Lucar*) If he had plotted any treason, he would never have come again, then *Brandisser* commanded the battel to be royally interred. This news gladdened the *Indian*, & betwixt gathering up all his forces, he issued forth of the City. The battel being begun, *Valentine* threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand by. Soze him. At last, meeting the *Indian*, he smote him off his horse: *Pacole* seeing him down, *Valentine* & he led him unto the Tent of King *Brandisser*: when tidings came that the *Indian* K. was taken, he called unto his men, saying: Follow hard, & the day is our own: so they entered the battel, & drove the *Indians* to a retreat. When *Brandisser* saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both sides a great slaughter. The battel lasted so long that it was night, & *Brandisser* & *Lucar* betook them to their Tents, & had that the *Indian* K. should be brought before them. When *K. Lucar* saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand. The *Indian* made shift to understand him, but said never a word.

King *Lucar* had no sooner ended his rough speech to the *Indian* K. but there arrived a Messenger, who said unto *Brandisser*: I bring you sad tidings, O King! for *Pepin* King of *France* hath taken your City of *Angory*, & put unto the sword, *Dan*, *Coloman*, and *Chili*. These are all tidings indeed (quoth *Brandisser*) but seeing we have the King of *Inde* in subjection, I hope shortly to free mine own Country. Then he said unto King *Lucar*, Son, we have the King of *Inde* in hold, let us make short work with him, & to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done, we will speed unto *Angory* against the French, and take vengeance for these wrongs done unto us. Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of *Greece* and the Great Knight, Prisoners; who at my coming shall suffer death. *Valentine* being present, was glad to hear of his Father, so by a sign he acquainted *Pacole*, that he should very shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that



into France to establish his heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, & then shall we be King of France, and Emperor of Rome, all which I thirst after. Brother (qu. Henry) your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished: Haufray said, I shall tell thee how: Go unto King Brandiffer, and tell him that I must have his daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that King Pepin & the twelve Peers of France, do determine to go to the holy Sepulchre, & they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but few in train. Brother, this will do well, wherefore make hast to India, there shall you find Lucar and Brandiffer: when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with them: So, so, qu. Haufray for I shall never be at quiet till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their father, who had now entered the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. Henry going along with them; and Haufray hath likewise taken his way towards India. So leave we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the host of Brandiffer and Lucar, treated a truce for a month; between them and the King of Inde: to appointing a day for to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Chyistians have won the Realm of Angory; wherefore I wonder that you continue here, maintaining a needless war, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore list a while to what I shall declare: The cause is, that the King of Inde slew your father Trompart, for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought & set between the two Kings, Lucar & the Indian: and if she will stay with the Indian, let her; if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, & Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called. Rozamond having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the Indian King, and Lucar departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this confession, Haufray came unto the host of Lucar & Brandiffer, & making hast to their Pavilion, he saluted them, unto whom Brandiffer said: What wind hath blown you hither? He, said Haufray, that I have to deliver, craveth secrecy & attention. So they drew from their attendants, & then Haufray

said, Lords, you know that I am sent to Pepin of France, & also understand that you speaking to Brandiffer have a beautiful daughter, now it is please you to give me your daughter in marriage, I will deliver into your hands my father, & all the Peers of France; that have so much distressed you, for know, that in the latter of August, they have taken their journey to visit the holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, slenderly accompanied: Quoth Brandiffer, for these tidings I will give thee my daughter Galazy, but it must be upon condition, that you renounce your faith, & qu. Haufray, that shall I do. When King Brandiffer saw the Treachery of Haufray, that he would betray his father, next for sake his Religion, he withdrew himself to advise with Lucar & the Caliph, saying to them: You see the Treasons of this man, that demandeth my daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the death of his father, & Ruine of the whole State of France: no, I will not make my daughter such an Orphan, I had rather see my daughters death, than give her to a vile Traytor: After these words, he called to Haufray, & said, Sir, I am glad of your coming, & this shall be your task, you shall go to my daughter, & bear this Letter from me, there pass away your time till we have further leisure to resolve on your business. He, said Haufray, I am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, & a few men to conduct him on his way: After they were at some few days they came within the sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was; when they were come to the Gate of the Castle, the Porter called to them, saying, my Lords you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said Haufray, tel the Lady that we shall satisfy her: the Porter went to the Lady, and said, Lady, without the Gate stand a company of men, that say would enter; & as I think they are come from your father. The Lady had her Gentleman Oliver, go know what they would, & whence they were, who did as she commanded: as soon as she understood he came from her father K. Brandiffer, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, so Haufray entered, & thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary for he by treason was intrapped. When entered the Castle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whose Beauty then amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some space of time he saluted the Lady, and said unto her: Fair Sovereign, my







market at their coming, and after salutations, demanded the cause. Then speak Brandisser, Sir, know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City, certain Pilgrims, the chief of them is R. Pepin of France, the rest are the worst of Pers. If he be so, we crave your aid & assistance, for they are unto us mortal enemies, & have taken from me my City of Angory, making great spoils within my Territories; wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against him according to our Law. Your demand is but reasonable (qd. the King of Iury) therefore shall be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall beride us & our Religion. Now hathen a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriarch about this matter, & if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The King of Iury sent a Messenger unto the Patriarch, to bring them before him; then the Patriarch went unto the Pilgrims, & said, Friends, you must come before the King of Iury. Hereat Pepin grew exceedingly sad, for he thought he should lose his life; but yet he culed a little, & I will tell you what we will do: let us here make Henry our Lord, & I will make upon him as a Page, bearing his hat & staff. Henry being so shuffed in reasons, denyed it, saying here's Orson & Myllon more worthier than I, let them take it upon them: qd. Myllon, to you please, I shall do any thing; then they took their way toward the Pagani that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, & bare his hat & staff. The Patriarch after he had delibered them to the K. departed, & the K. of Iury said unto them: It is told me you are all French-men come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of France. Sir, said one of the company, the K. of France is not here: How not here (qd. the K. of Iury) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous death. Then speak Hen the Traitor, & said, it is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted reason, & said, Sir I am the K. of France, but withal suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, & it is for us to go safely, even by your own Law & Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid & observed, therefore you do us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your custom say what you will (qd. Iury) but to Spies, there is no such priviledges

allowed:

priviledges allowed: & now he called forth Brandisser & Lucar, & said unto them: Lords, these be the Christian spies, take them, & do with them as pleaseth you. These words uttered, the Pilgrims were last holden, & then Brandisser said: Lords let these be conveyed to my strongest Castle & put them into the deepest Dungeon; which done, let us make hast into Angory & beat out all our enemies; after, into France, to bring that to our subjection; all this may be easily effected, for we have all the Pers thereof in captivity, so that there is not a man of worth to make resistance. This done, the Indian King requited that amongst all those Prisoners, he might have the little one to make his Dwarf of, (which was R. Pepin) his request was likewise granted, so he took along with him King Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian K. taking his leave, every one of the Pers lookt pitifully on R. Pepin, but durst not speak to him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament. How unfortunate am I among them! alas D. Myllon, it grieves me most for thee, for thy love towards me hath brought thee self in danger. But for my son Henry, I lay all my trust on thee, that refused to relieve thy Father in case of extremity. Farewell Bertha my wife, & my young son Charles, thy case is most dangerous, for what will not Traitors attempt against thee? by this time is the Indian come home into his own land. When the Lady Rozamond saw his approach, she was right glad, & received him with kindness; at last she thide her eyes on R. Pepin, who was of small stature, & demanded of the K. where he had that little man: Lady, said the King, he was given me at Jerusalem being come thither with the King of France, and the worst of Pers.

But now let us return to speak somewhat of Clerimond, who was in the Court of the Indian K. The Kings manner was to send her every meal of the best meat from his own table, & one night at supper time, called Pepin unto him, so to eat & see provision, saying unto him: Go into the great chamber on the other side of the Court, there shalt thou find a foolish woman, bear this from me to her; Pepin did as he was commanded; but when he saw her in those rags, he said to her: Pity your distressed estate, when the lady heard him say so, she said friend, pity thy self, let me alone, I am not what I seem to be: but tell me, art thou a Christian lady, said Pepin, I am, & come from the Realm of France. Then the lady with a smiling countenance said: know you then R. Pepin & his Nephew Valentine? (qd. Pepin) & his

brother Orson, & his father the Emperour of Greece: Thy lady hearing him say so, began to shed tears & yet spake, saying: Friend, may I put trust in you? I, said R. Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural father: Then thus know for certainty, that all that I have done, is but counterfeited, for I am a Christian and the woful love of Valentine that was given unto him as his wife, but was betrayed and stolen away by that Traitor R. Trompart. Then he unfolded the manner of all these things: when R. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself thus: Ha! what trust is in this world: alas for this poor Lady, alas for Valentine; & yet to see it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlikely adventure: After he had ended these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I understand whom you are, & sith you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, give me leave also a little to shew you who I am: Here you see me, & in what shape I go clothed, yet know that I am Pepin R. of France, & by disastrous chance am fallen in this servitude. As for Valentine, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, & continueth still without taking any rest: Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make those things known to him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady swooned, but Pepin seeing her recovered, left her, & came unto the King, being at supper. So here we rest to talk any more of this matter, and return to say somewhat of Brandisser & Lucar, who are builed in leading the twelve Peers of France to Prison.

Brandisser having the twelve Peers in prison, & with them Haufray & Henry, the only workers of the Treason, came unto his Castle, where he told all the whole matter: He to his daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his hand, having finished his tale, he put them in to a Dungeon, whereas the Emperour, the Queen R. & Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled, that he durst not discover his mind to Brandisser, for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon, after him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth Myllon) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place. Haufray knew after that it was D. Myllon, & demanded of him, by what means he came thither? Nay (quoth Myllon) I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you within the City Angory. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a spy, and for that cause I am hither brought.

Now

Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison, but when Haufray understood that R. Pepin was not among them, he seemed but wofully exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only Orson, & he bear it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my brother Valentine and pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. Brandisser having thus made all sure called before him his daughter Galazy, & said unto her: I must depart to satisfy mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will aid me against the French, that holdeth the City of Angory, therefore keep well my prisoners, so he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King, he sent his forces, and came not himself, by reason that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their forces, & took their way towards Angory, whither being come, Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for R. Pepin. This much amazed the noble Valentine, when he saw the Tents so nigh him: at last he call'd Pacolet unto him, saying: I wonder I hear not of my Uncle Pepin, fear not (said Pacolet) for ere long we will hear better news; & therewithal departed from Angory, and never rested till he came to the Camp of R. Lucar, who stopping him, demanded of him what news, & what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served? Pacolet answered, Sir, he is long since dead, & I am come to seek a new master. (Quoth Lucar) wilt thou serve me? Yes (quoth Pacolet) Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same night by enchantment he put Lucar into such a sleep, that he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, & Lucar being placed before a fire the enchantment ceased, & he awaked. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, & at last Pacolet said unto him: Master, I am at your service have you any thing to command me? At the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet such a wound that he fell down dead. Valentine seeing this accident, was exceeding sorrowful, & said: such another friend shall I never have, false traitor (quoth he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, if thou hast thou shalt surely pay for it: then said Lucar, I am glad that traitor is slain.

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, & took out of his bosom a pair of writing tables, in which was written the whole man-

ner of his Art. These tables had pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wishing him that if he outlived him, he should make great account of them: so Valentine put them up, & after made use of them: here would Valent. have K. Lucar put to death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in prison; insomuch that any worthy personage should be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar should serve for ransome of the other. Thus Valentine caused the body of pacolet to be honourably interred, whose death was bewailed of all. The next morning there arose an outcry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone, no man knew how: among the rest Brandiffer made great lamentation, till one told him he was in Angory, & how he had slain pacolet, Brandiffer was glad pacolet was slain, but sorry for Lucar; at last calling to him a Messenger, he sent to Valentine, to ask him if he would deliver Lucar, for K. Pepin, the Emperour, or Orson or any other of the twelve Peers of France; the messenger departed on his way with these conditions, & coming to the City of Angory, desired to speak with Valentine: After salutations on both parts, he declared his message from K. Brandiffer. Valentine hearing the effect of his message, was much amazed, & said to the messenger, how cometh it to pass, that Brandiffer can make choice of all these valiant men, how became they his prisoners? And the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how that K. Pepin, accompanied with the 12 Peers of France, not long since went to Jerusalem, and having amongst them one traitor, was delivered into the hands of Brandiffer, & by him taken in Jerusalem, & committed to prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, said, will you change one prisoner for another? Messenger, I shall give answer to thee anon: so entering into the hall, he assembled unto him all his counsel, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our Prisoner Lucar, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle K. Pepin: now in this cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, & therefore we judge it most meet to release him. Lords, qu. Valentine, you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my mother was wrongfully banished, and so in exile brought me forth, & my brother in the Forrest of Orleance, where we might both have been devoured of beasts, if my Uncle K. Pepin had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up unto manhood: after he made me K. & hath bestowed upon me many pre-

ferments

ferments: therefore I say, these things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for K. Lucar; he being thus at liberty, will quickly work the freedom of my father and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto them the Messenger of Brandiffer, and said: Friend, return this answer to thy Master, tell him, that we shall willingly yield the body of K. Lucar, upon condition that he deliver unto us the body of K. Pepin: so after due reverence done, the Messenger departed; being returned home, he delivered his Message as Valentine had delivered it to him, whereupon Brandiffer swooze by the Gods, he should have his Request.

#### CHAP. XLIX.

How Myllon Dougler (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of prison in lieu of King Lucar: And how Valentine and the Duke of Myllon issued out of the City of Angory, and won the battel from the Sarazens: and how K. Pepin was delivered in change for the King of India's Marthal, and left Angory, and returned into France, to succour his Wife.

Brandiffer understanding Valentines mind, he suddenly dispatched the messengers to his daughter Galazy, who kept the Strong Castle, wishing her to deliver unto these messengers the K. of France, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her Fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the Prison, & commanded him to call forth the K. of France, the Goaler went to the Prison, calling for the K. of France, for I'm commanded to set him at liberty. D. Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfy himself but in doubting manner said, I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? If it be so, I am the first that must suffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my religion. Arc. qu. the Goaler, tis no such matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to ransom another pagan K. which resteth in captivity amongst the Christians: when Henry heard these words, he repented that he denied to take upon him the person of the K. Thus D. Myllon took's leave with Tears, the Emp. of Greece said unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my son Valentine, & me too (qu. Orson) and tell him in what misery we be, requesting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our lives, Myllon comforted them all he might, & said

said unto them, Lords, I will not return into France, till I see you at liberty, & so he took his way. Being out of Prison, he went to the Lady Galazy, & did unto her reverence, which she kindly excepted, & commended him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the K. of France. When they were come before Brandiffer, he said unto him, King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, and to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and in your stead, to send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish; & if he will not deliver K. Lucar according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again according to your mercy. Royally spoke (quod Brandiffer) I ask no more. So the D. took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards Angory. After few days they arrived where they had free access to the Palace where Valentine lay, being in sight of one another, they kindly embraced. After D. Myllon took Valentine aside, and related unto him the whole course of his actions, and how K. Pepin was led away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings name, only to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a benefit had hapned to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Sovereign you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse he caused K. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: K. Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend Pacolet, whom you have slain. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was Lucar delivered, & the D. Myllon restored in his stead: Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered Troops up into battal array, and with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issued out of the City upon the enemy. Brandiffer hearing hereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four Kings his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

When Valentine resolved to give a new Onset upon the Pagans, and

and courageously heartening his men, he set upon that part where was Brandiffer & K. Lucar. In the thickest of this Battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of Massidon) espying a French-man making havoc with his sword among the Pagans, he made towards him & hitting him with his Axe, he cleave his head in 2 peeces: having newly done this deed, he was espied by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the presence of Myllon Daugler, he smote him dead: for the which act of Valour Myllon knighted him, and said among them all: That he that won Valour should receive the like reward. In this manner continued the Battel all that day, even till the sun-set. At last they strove on each part which should sound Retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that they continued all that night, till the next morning, making great fires to give them light. At break of day the Battel began afresh in most fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themselves right valiantly, on every side they beat down both Horse & Man. But Valentine was too forward for he entered so far into the enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandiffer. Being there, the Indian Admiral espied him, who ran so fiercely at him, that he slew Valentine's horse under him, who perceiving himself unhors'd, lightly got upon his feet, & with his sword hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not D. Myllon by chance relieved him with a fresh horse. So Valentine retired himself out of the battel to refresh his tired limbs. When the Indian Marshal saw that side had the worst, he by his policy withdrew his forces, and in the night-time stole out of sight, so that at last they took them to their heels and run away.

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, so they determined that Valentine & his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, & fell upon the Indians in such furious manner, that they upon their first adventure, breast their Battel array. The Marshal seeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him such a rap with his Spear, as both Horse and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the ground, the soldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the custody of four valiant Knights.

In this bickering there was many prisoners of account surprized and taken, all which Valentine sent into Angory, to be kept in safety.



By this time of the day, Brandiff and Lucar knew that they had the worst, but they could not make resistance. At last they resolved to return again into their own Countreys, and renew their Forces afresh, So wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their flight towards the Sea-coast, & the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them: of all the pagans multitudes that went into the field, escaped but 100 persons: they being gone the Christians rising their tents, found inestimable treasure, & having so done, they returned to Angory, to rest their tired limbs. After the Christians had won the battel, & given burial to the dead, Valentine commanded the prisoners to be brought before him. Amongst the rest was the Marshal of India, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his Mahometry, the Marshal answered, he would sooner forsake his life: then D. Myllon demanded of what country he was, he said, I am a Marshal of India, & one whom the K. loveth. D. Myllon to Valentine, we are made happy in this prisoner, for in exchange of him we shall release K. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian K. to be his dwarf, when we were taken prisoners at Jerusalem: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his possession a Christian of low stature: yes, qu. he, there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his prisoner, & thither was he brought when the 12 Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshal (qu. Valentine) it is he after whom we inquire, wherefore let him be brought hither & delivered to us, & you shall be set at liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended on my person. At these words the Marshal rejoiced, & sent Letters to the Indian K. The messenger being dispatched, he brought letters to the Indian K. & when he had read them he was willing to change, for he knew not that it was K. pepin, & calling him before him, he said: friend, we give you free liberty to depart my country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be surrendered in your stead; K. pepin thanked him, & taking his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond & said: Lady, take good heed, for I am set at liberty, & I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon work your release. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful, and pepin departed with the Messenger towards Angory. After some few days they arrived there, where the Frenchmen spared for no cost, to shew their love to K. Pepin, at last Valen said: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, & by that means procured your liberty. Nephew (said

King

K. pepin) you above all men have most cause to rejoyce, for I bring you the happiest news that ever you heard, & this it is: Fair Clerimond, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her misfortunes, & how she had demeaned her self, to shun the love of the Indian K. Valentine hearing this joyful tidings he uttered these words: Dear Lady, thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, and cursed I, if I prove false, & for trial hereof, I will either purchase thy freedom, or lose mine own life. This speech being ended, the Marshal was delibered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber, to try the Tables that he took out of pacolers bosom when he was slain, and found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, & taking Pen, Ink, and Paper, he wrote down what there he found, & sowing it unto his Doublet (for fear of losing) it stood him in great stead after, for the safeguard of his life, as will hereafter appear.

K. pepin being resident in Angory, news was brought him from his wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his life, and of the twelve Peers of France; because they heard they were taken prisoners by the pagans at Jerusalem. This report running for current throughout France, hath caused Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puissant host to enter the Kingdom, & to win the Crown of France by violence. Also the said Arthur hath committed to exile your young son Charles. When K. pepin heard these tidings, he grew wonderfully desperate, and presently called together all his Barons, & sat in counsel what was requisite to be done in such a plot. At last twas resolved, that K. pepin in person should depart into his own land, to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, and coming unto Valentine, he began to speak unto the K. Fair Uncle. It were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my father and the 12 Peers of France. So so (qu. K. pepin) & if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.

C H A P. L.

How Valentine under the shape of a Physician, went into India, to see & speak with the fair Clerimond: And how Valentine rode away with her. And how the K. of Brittain was given to K. Pepin by treason. And how Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners:

C c

And



And how the Emperor, *Orson*, and the Green Kt. kept a strong Garrison in his Castle; and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orson* and the Green Kt. left the Castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid Battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father; and how *Myllon Daugler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*.

**Y**OU have heard already that *K. Pepin* brought news unto *Valentine* of the Lady *Clerimond* which having heard, it would not out of his mind: at last he resolved to pass from *Angory* to *India*, accompanied with one *Escuire*, and in the shape of a *Physician*, he went to Sea with the *Indian Merchants*: being arrived, he lay in the City at an *Inn-holders* house, till his *Gown* and other *Habilliments* were in a readines. At his first entrance in this *Inn*, the *Host* asked him what he was? he said a *Physician*, & can cure any manner of disease. The *Host* believed him, and his *Elq*; served him as his *Apothecary* or *Clerk*. In this manner, lying there about 4 days, he called his *Host* to him, & desired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his Art, & see who needed help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get something to defray my charge while I lie in your house; but in the mean space rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good pawn: *Harry* (qd. the *Host*) with all my heart, I accept of your gage: So *Valentine* delivered him a rich *Mantle*, furred quite through with costly *Furs*, and bad him bring before him that party that should make known his Art. The *Host* went out, and brought him a ragged fellow, who had not any thing to hang upon him: *Valentine* yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new clothed him from head to foot, and said unto him; My friend, go thy ways into the City, & cry about the same, that there is come a *Physician*, that can heal all diseases, even *Mad men* or *Women*, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from place to place, to publish this *Doctors* skill. At last these tidings came to the *K.* because he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former senses. So the *King* bearing good will to the Lady *Clerimond*, sent for this *Physician*; who altho' he had before him many *Cripples*, blind, lame, and crooked, at his lodging, yet he left them

them all, & came unto the *King* for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the *K.* he did his obeysance in the name of the great God *Jupiter*: and the *King* said unto him; Sir, you be welcome to my Court, first dine, & then I shall tell you further, the cause of my sending for you. The *K.* being set and served, made *Valentine* also to be richly attended, & dinner being done, said unto him; Sir, I have a beautiful Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my *Queen*, for I love her dearly, but she will by no means consent until the term of one year was expired: I granted her to forbear that year, as she demanded, but at the end she was possessed with a *Lunacy*, inso much that none durst come within her reach; sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pitiful manner, another while she laugheth, and then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is over-charged with sorrow for her: Now if your skill extend it self to cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my wife *Rozamond* being dead, I would make her *Queen* of *India*. My Lord (qd. *Valentine*) fear not but she shall do well, but she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits. You shall (qd. the *King*) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self, lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided *Valentine* to her window: now go thy way, & leave me alone. When *Valentine* beheld her in this desperate case, he said; Alas my love, you have bought me dear, as I have you; but by the Gods I swear, I shall never return again to *France*, till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, & whatsoever came first to hand, she threw at him, which much amazed *Valentine*: then said *Valentine*, is this true madness, or but feigned? Dear love (qd. he) tell me true. I am *Valentine* your love, for whom I have suffered all this damage. Think on the *Brazen-head* that you gave me, or of my brother *Orson* that had the string cut in his mouth, or how you were stolen away by the enchanter *Adrimain*. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a swoond for joy; & being again recovered she said: Alas my Love, how many dangers have we passed through; you for me, and I for you? And now behold in what calamity I have carried my self this day. Lady, love dearly bought is the sweetest: By this time the *Trumpets* sounded to bring in the *Kings* meat for *Supper*, so

that he said unto the lady: My love, I will go into the Palace, but after supper I will come again, for the K. knoweth not but that I am a Physician, & hath sent for me to heal you: the lady bid him go. Being come into the Palace, as soon as the King saw him he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes (qd. Valentine) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The K. was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle, all beset with precious stones, & caused him to sit down at his own Table. After supper, Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for he will be extremely sick all this night. Well, qd. the K. let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine takes his way towards the chamber of fair Clerimond, with one that carried wood to make his fire withal; which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Esq; then Valentine shut all the doors and windows, & said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his eye aside, he espied the horse of wood, and asked her whose it was, who answered, pacolets: then said Valentine, let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with pacolets horse, mounted him with Clerimond & his Esq, in a Moon-shine night, & with great expedition hasted unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened, & there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, & married her: by this time the K. knew of her escape, and grew frenzied, & said: Ha! thou false enchanter, hast thou deceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life: & so he caused pursuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of K. pepin, how he hasted into France to the succour of Bertha his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The K. of Britain not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself with all the Forces he could make, and sent out Proclamation, that all that could bear Arms should assist him into France. Hereupon Queen Bertha, with her young son Charles, fled to Lyons to seek succour: At the same time lived a worthy & trusty Earl of Anjou, who laboured the Queen, and pitying her distress, fortified his Castle against the Britains, to whom the Queen

sent



sent 4000 horse to keep the passage. At last the K. of Britain bid the Earl give him passage into France, but he answered, No: For upon there was appointed a band of Soldiers, to lay siege at Angiers, but the Earl kept close within the City, & would not issue out thereof. During the siege was K. Pepin come to Paris, & there was joyfully received: when the Queen understood he was at Paris, she hasted unto him, & when she came before him, in tears, she said: Fear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper Lady (qd. the K.) fear it not. So calling about him his Counsellors, & men of war, he made haste to furnish up his companies, & many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the K. any service. By this time the K. of Britain heard that K. pepin was come against him with a great army, which feared him, & not without cause. But see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him unto K. pepin, to save their own estates, & make their peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, and led him perforce before K. pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off within the City of Paris. Now they thought that betrayed him; all was well but the K. afterwards seized all their lands into his hands.

Now

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperour his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well that the Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, nor by any thing, but by Treason; At last he resolved on a subtle Plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea 12 Ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones and Silks, & thus as Merchants, arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a Rich Crown on his head, & said unto his men: be you all privately armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard put them to death. When coming toward the Castle-gate, with the Crown on his head, the porter said: what bring you hither: Friend said Valentine, I am a Merchant, going into Spain, & having many rich commodities, I hear say that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of death; said the Porter, I'll go to my lady, & bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy, & told his message: the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneschal: Go & receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant, & take along with you a sufficient company of Souldiers, lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, & coming to the ships they found inestimable Gems; insonmuch that they were ravish't therewith: so they taking the value of the tribute due to the lady suddenly the Christians, that lay hid in the ship set upon them, & slew them. Then Valentine said unto them: except we go forward in this enterprise, we shall never gain the castle: wherefore he caused 50 of his men to put on their Sarazens Gowns over their armours, & so lading themselves with silks & precious stones, took their way to the castle. The porter tied up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, & thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insonmuch as Valentine led him to the ships: being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, & said: I will make you like one of these, if you give me not passage into this castle Sir (qd. the porter) I shall do it: why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: come, said the porter, bringing all these men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, & let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entered the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the doors to be set open, then winded he his horn, at which, all those in the

SH

Ship hastened unto them. Then he entered the chamber of the lady Galazy, who was astonished therat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your Royal presence: then he had him welcome, & highly feasted him. Valentine's men having entered the Castle, with their Shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Countess's Kt. save my virginity, Lady (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, & Valentine having unto the Dungeon did break it open, & cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither? Valentine said, I am come to see you at liberty. At these words the Emperour fell into a swoond, but Orson suddenly recovered him: then they came out of the Dungeon in ragged clothes, & ill-coloured faces; but the Christians rebelled for the space of seven days in the Castle, & Orson falling in love with Galazy after the death of Fezon, married her, by whom he had a Son, named Orsayr, who after had the Empire of Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a Council was called what was best to be done: At last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufray and Henry should undertake this task: but Haufray replied, Not soe, for we are determined to go into France, to serve our father. Quoth Orson, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words Haufray and Henry were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolved that the Emperour should take his rest, and his Son Orson, and the Green Knight should remain there, to besiege the Castle, whilst Valentine and the rest addressed themselves for Angory. Now will we look into the treason of Haufray and Henry, who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life of their Father, little Charles his Son, and Bertha the Queen. Being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, and after demanded what news of the Emperour, Valentine, Orson, & the rest? (quoth the Traytors) they were all slain in a battel at Angory, at which the King wared wonderful sad. After this, they poisoned the King and Queen. Now little Charles was still living, who (as the Gods would have it) happened under the safe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The

The King & Queen being both treacherously poisoned, the two traitors seemed to be exceeding sorrowful, but *M. Myllon* being a man of a valiant and courageous spirit. forthwith caused a council to be holden, wherein he would have crowned young *Charles* King of France, but *Haufray* & *Henry*, by bribes so corrupted the Lords, that *Charles* was held too young. Whereupon *M. Myllon* was committed to prison for standing on the child's part, & *Charles* held as a bitchin-boy.

A little after it hapned, that *Haufray* commanded *Charles* to turn a spit, but the boy being full of Majesty, took up the spit, & felled him to the earth. At this, out steps *Henry*, thinking to smite the child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a box on the Ear, that the blood issued out at his mouth. Then *Haufray* commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a *Kt.* which took *Charles* by the hand, and conveyed him to Paris. The Traitors perceiving *Charles* was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Whereupon *M. Myllon* told his wife thereof, who was sister to *Charles*, the Lady could not behold the same for tears, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these treasons; & forthwith caused Letters to be written into Angory unto *Valentine*, and the 12 Peers of France. These Letters came first into the hands of *Valentine*, who could not chuse but weep at this act of villany. The Lords perceiving his tears, asked the cause: he answered *K. Pepin* & the Queen are dead, & as for *Charles*, the two accursed brothers, *Haufray* & *Henry*, have chased him out of the Country, imprisoned *M. Myllon*, and all that held on young *Charles* his side: these are the contents of these Letters, & the Lady that lendeth them, requireth help to apprehend these rebels. These sad tydings put them to their wits end, & lying between two extremes, knew not which way to take, for *Brandiff* was daily expected with an Army of many thousands. at last *Valentine* said: ere to morrow night I will set free *M. Myllon*, or else my skill shall deceive me: at which they laughed heartily. *Valentine* departed, & with pacolet's horse he suddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the Gates, & released all the prisoners, and being shewed the chamber where *M. Myllon* was, he entered the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, & said Sir, I am *Valentine*, which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his horse, & bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the *Ap.* The *M.* prayed him to pass by the Castle of Angier, that he might but see his wife

wife, which he did, & being come to the lady thereof, who presently ran & kissed him, demanding of him whether he went: lady (qd. he) I go to fight against the Infidels to bring home the 12 Peers of France, with an army to overthrow *Haufray* & *Henry*, & to succour *Charles*. Having refreshed themselves with meat, they set forth towards *Anga*, being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonished at *Valentine*'s art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man: Now was *Brandiff* with his host, come within a mile of Angory, & there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing thereof, shut up their gates, drew up their bridges, & after got on the walls, lying a month together without making resistance. The Emperor hearing that *Brandiff* had besieged Angory with so huge an army, resolved to leave the strong Castle to the Guard of a *Kt.* So the Emperor *Orson* & the great *Kt.* took shipping accompanied with 1000 Souldiers: being at Sea, they saw a great fleet of ships coming to them, & at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men, going to the succour of *Brandiff*. the Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was shown on both sides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian *Kt.* tumbled him over ship-board: *Ors.* standing by him grew angry: & taking his Ar, struck him stark dead. This deed discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves all that night, they having lost 15 tall ships, & 400 men. Then the Emperor said: Lords, let us arm our selves with such weapons as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this enterprise was fatal, for the Emperor was slain by his own son *Valentine* who took for him an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoise sail again. and at last arrived in Angory.

After a months siege, *Valentine* sent a defiance to *Brandiff*, offering him battel. The Christians divided their battel in ten Squadrons, whereof *M. Myllon* was their General. The second Sampson of Orleans. The third, *Earl* of Vandsom. The fourth, *Earl* of Champagne. The fifth, *Quintine* of Norm. The sixth, the *M.* of Burgoyne. The seventh, the *Earl* of Dampmartin. The eighth, the *Earl* of Alserve. The ninth, the Marshal of Constantinople. The tenth was *Valentine*, who added courage to all the rest. Being in order, they issued out of the City, to assail *Brandiff*, who had divided his army in 15 Squadrons, & the Squadron which had the least commander, was a *Kt.*



At the joyning of these battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had been in wars) couched his Spear in his rest, & would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking, to cool his pride, ran against him, & struck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell-mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly, & the Indian King entering the Battel, made very much slaughter: but Valentine missing him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he set him besides his Horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, & caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain, with 3000 men, & continued the battel more hotter then before. By this time R. Lucar lighted on the Indian K. & lent him succor: now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant Ks. arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & suffered much misery) entered the field. The one of them brought into France, the daughter of a rich admiral, called Claradine, & caused her to be baptized, the name of the one, was Reynord of Province, the other, Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for Myllon of Dyon at his first encounter, smote R. Lucar stark dead, & at the next another R. called Rubres; which accident much amazed Brandisser. At another part of the battel rushed in Reynord, & slew many of them. Valentine wondered at these two Ks. of Chibalry, & coming towards them, said, Lords, you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance come you hither? Friend (qd. Reynord) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called Reynord, Lord of Province & my companion is called Myllon of Dyon. Quoth Valentine, once again hartly welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, & all the Peers of France: so they joyntly rushed a'resh into the Battel. All this while the Indian K. had a spleen at Valentine, for his last disgrace, & finding him out, accompanied only with 3 other Kings, they so encountered Valentine, that they did smite him & his horse to the ground: being down, he quickly recovered, & drawing his sword, defended himself therewith, but with much danger. At last M. Myllon, Sampson, & Gervis, came unto his succor, getting a fresh horse for him. Valen. being mounted, made his course against the Indian K. again, & striking him down, took away his shield, which he kept, (for he had lost his own) This ended, tidings came, that a great fleet of Sarazens

was

was coming near unto the Haven. Whereupon Valentine said, Lords, let us presently go strengthen the passages. So Valentine & the M. Myllon of Dyon went to the Haven, but these were all friends and Christians, amongst whom, was his father the Emperour of Greece, of whom you shall hear more at large.

The Emperour having landed his men, Val. saluted him with his spear in his rest: the Emperour (who bare the shield of a Sarazen unknown) encountered with his son. At last Valen. ran his spear quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead, he said montioy vive Greece. Orson seeing his father dead, did weep, & said to Val. brother, there is small conquest in this, for you have slain your father. When he heard him say so, he fell in an extasie from his horse. To this lamentation of the 2 brothers, came Rey. of Prov. & Myl. of Dyon to comfort them, saying, Ks. have patience, for tears cannot recal him; Alas, said Val. what have I done? It were happy for me, if death would take me from this world I have committed this fact, detestable both to God & men: What will become of me? my life have I passed away in troubles, torments and cares, & now to add more sorrow to my days, I have shed the blood of my dear father. Brother Ors. take my sword & cut off my head, that the earth may not bear so bloody a butcher. Brother, said Ors. depart not thus, but repent, & no doubt but you shall be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he ran through out the Pagan Troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the battel to encrease, & R. Christo. slew the Christians on every side. At last Valen. meeting him, gave him such a Canbalada, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel the M. Myllon of Dyon, & Reynord of Province, rushed so fierce into the battel of the enemy that they were taken prisoners: yet notwithstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their liberties once again, & made Charles K. of France, with honour and joy, to the destruction of Haufrey & Hedry the two notable Traitors: yet was not this fierce, long & tedious battel ended, for they stood it out manfully on either side. Valen. being careless of life, at last met with Brandis. who encountered each other so fiercely that both fell to the earth: but Valentine suddenly recovering himself, took the K. such a blow, that he clabe his head. R. Brumant seeing his brother slain, went out of the field with the admiral of Cordes, & K. Isureh, who caused a retreat to be sounded: the

Ed 2

Christians



Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the sea, & drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City: next morning in burying the dead there was great lamentation for the Emper. of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory, D. Myllon took his leave of Valen: to return into France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither. Friend (said Valentine) I would I had never known the art, for it hath brought nothing but shame and vexation on me, & him an untimely death, that taught it me: so that D. Myllon departed. Valentine and Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departure, they Crowned the Green Kt. K. of Angory. After leave taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him, and said, Love, I know you are wily child by me; yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife; but before I go, I will make certain lands over unto you for your maintenance; that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denied, but said, she would go to sea with him; & after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (qd. Orson) & so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they send word to the Emperors of their Father's death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City also: making great triumphs throughout the same. The Emperors being on a certain time at dinner, said unto her Sons: it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperors. Orson replied, it appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you; you nothing to me: therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should jointly govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity; for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, & said thus unto her: understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for that fact, & I am therefore minded to go on pilgrimage. Commend me to my mother, & my brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen days be passed over, & then give them this Letter: all which the Lady must consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LI.

How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage, and how King Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, and how he betrayed Orson and the Green Knight: and how Galeran delivered Letters to the Ladies; and of the grievous lamentations they made; How Belshazzar and Clerimond came to know of King Hugons Treason; and how Galeran lost his head; and how Orson and the Green Knight were set free.

Then Valentin said, lady, cease your tears, & give me your blessing King: she having done so, he brake it in two pieces, keeping the one half, & giving her the other: saying, My Love, keep thy half, & whatsoever you hear believe nothing, till you see this other half, which



I possess. At these words he embraced her, & wept bitterly, so departed only on horse with him. Having long travelled, at last he came to Rome, there coming into the presence of a Hermit, he confessed the death of his Father; the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoined him penance: First change thy habit, & go barely clothed, & 7 years live under the stairs of thy Palace, without speaking any words, thou shalt neither

neither eat nor drink, but of the scraps that come from thine own table; do this, & fear not thy Ang. Sir, said Valentine, all this I will do: so after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant after this, Valentine entered into a Wood, feeding upon Roots, and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men.

Ors. having now read the Letter that Clerimond delivered him, wept bitterly, in so much as the lady said unto him: Brother, cease your lament. Alas, said Ors., I have great cause, for this letter sheweth, that my brother will never return. Hereat the lady swooned, & recovering her self, she said, why hath my love hid his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again. News was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond wailed, Belysant complained, & Ors. sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fez. hearing that Orson had got another lady with child, she died with grief. Being dead, Ors. made a years solemnity of her funeral, & after married Galazy, of whom you have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valen. came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, in so much that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his brothers Palace, about supper-time, & those that waited at the table, beat him away: Ors. seeing them so churlish, had them let him alone, for I am willing all poor men should be relieved for my brother Valentines sake, that so we may hear tidings of him. After this, they brought him meat & wine, but he espying a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders: night being come, the servants asked Ors. if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace. I (qd. Ors.) for it may be for some time which he hath made. Thus abode Val. & made his bed under the stairs, of straw. On the morrow, Ors. passing by, gave him money; after came his Mother, and his Wife Clerimond, & they gave him money, saying: How can you endure thus naked, without cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his money to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour: next day at dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, & made signs for the Alms-basket: Orson to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then said Orson, surely this is some time he hath made unto the Gods. Thus did Valentine remain within the Palace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In

In these days there was a King of Hungaria, named Hugon, who heard that Valen. had given over the Empire of Greece unto his brother Orson: this Hugon came to Constantino. & was honourably received. After his arrival, he came to the Lady Clerimond, & said I am K. of Hunga. & have no wife, & for that purpose I am come hither to crave your love, I know that Valen. is dead, or else that he will never return, dear K. grant me thy love, & thou shalt be K. of Hunga. Sir, (qd. the lady) I thank you for your kindly proffer, but to be your wife I cannot; for sure my Valen. lieth, & for 7 years I will every day expect his return: besides, when I make choice of a husband, my brother Ors. & the Queen K. must know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orson, & demanded of him if he heard any news from his brother? Ors. K. (qd. Ors.) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, which his wife delivered me, & certified me that he is gon to exile & beareth about him half the King he was married withal, the other half he left with her, charging her that she believe nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The gods be his good speed (qd. Hugon) for he was a worthy K. But one thing (qd. Hugon) have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to Jerusalem, to visit the holy Shrine, so you would bear me company. With all my heart (qd. Ors.) but let us go to Angory, & take with us the Queen K. who is K. thereof. It shall be so (qd. Hugon.) So Ors. taking leave of his Mother, & his wife Galazy, came to Angory, & was received with great joy. Having feasted there, they took their way to Jerusalem. Being come into the City, (while they were beholding divers Monuments) Hugon stole away from them to the K. of Iury, & said: I have a message to deliver worth your attention. There is newly arrived here, 2 worthy Kts. that are your greatest enemies, for they slew K. Brandi. K. Lucar, & your brother K. of India. When Rabastre heard all that he could say, he was sorry for the death of his brother, & said to Hugon: Can you deliver me these two Kts? Yea, said the traitor: so you will give me their gold seals; Sir, (qd. he) them & much more will I give you. Then hearken, send to the Patriarchs house, & he will tell you where they are. The K. soon sent out 800 armed men, & found them at dinner, then they took them & brought them unto the K. False enemies (qd. the K.) to our lives & religion, my heart even leapeth for joy that I have got you, tell me what is your names? my name is Ors. & this is the Queen K. you are

are the men I look for, & there is another called Val. had I him also, I would use you all alike, then he caused their seals to be taken away, & given to Hugon, & they to be cast in a dungeon, & fed only with bread & water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought he had been slain by the Parazens, while he was plotting with another traitor in the City called Galeran, & began thus to salute him; Galeran, my desire is to employ your secret in a matter of import, & I will reward thee sufficiently. Uncle (qd. Gal. Fear me not; I know your drift, you would obtain fair Clerimond True (said Hugon) therefore let us write a letter in the name of Ors. & we will seal it with his seal, & the Letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the power of the gods, Emperor of Greece, unto the thrice Renowned Sovereign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love Galazy, and my sister Clerimond, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience; Ladies, know that I have found my brother Valentine, on his death-bed at Jerusalem, & a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute Clerimond in his name, and command her, that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband: the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Hugon wrote another Letter, saying

Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother Valentine, but now we wish you, for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first to accomplish the desire of the dead; secondly to increase your honour, we advice you to match with Hugon King of Hungary, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for further authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet return, for great Wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the gods.

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Gal. to bear to Conant. himself following after: by this means thinking to get the Lady Galeran, being in Constantinop. delivered his Letters to the Lady Bellysant, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward she called one to read them, & Valen. lying in the Hall, heard the Contents thereof: being read, the ladys grew reading sorrowful for the death of Valen. but especially the lady Clerimond, piteously lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst

Women

women am I. Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to see thy body laid up safe in the earth, unkind Brother, & thy Queen, who are you two such enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after Valentines death, seeing I have lost such a noble, magnanimous, & loving kn. the mirror of Chivalry, the rose of honour, the example of courtesie & the patron of truth. Death, hast thou not one dart left to shoot at this poor heart, for seeing my life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have other Husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days: All this did Valentine behold, which he pitied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence. Bellysant seeing Clerimond thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient, he was my son, & I sorrow for him at my heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back therewith, I pass it over, & rather think on what your Brother, and my son Orson doth advise you unto. Good Father (qd. the Lady) say no more, for I shall never marry, & therewith went weeping to her Chamber, & Valentine layd under the stairs, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four days after, H. Hugon came to Constantinop. and was received with great honour, but Clerimond shewed him no favour. Being there he said unto the Empress: Will you understand of the death of your son, for whom I am sorry: but it is agreed upon that I shall marry the Lady Sir, (qd. Clerimond) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this treason Valentine heard. But in the end, the matter was so urged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much encreased his sorrows, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Passions to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him thus: Valentine get thee out of the City, and without the gates is a Pilgrim, put on his weeds, having them on, get thee to thy Palace & there before all comers reveal the treason practised against thy love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known. Valentine coming to the court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the traitor Hugon, then he that uttered such reproachful words against Clerimond: Now Valentine came to Bellysant saying: Lady, I beseech you shew me the wife of Valentine: wherat Hugon blushing, replied: Pilgrim, get thee gone into the ditch, for this is no place for thee. Sir, said Valentine, I would fain do a message to her: wouldst thou, said the Lady, I am she that thou desirest to see: then thus, I have lately seen your Love Valentine, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within 3 days he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my Love is dead. Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said: Hugon hearing these words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his horse, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale, & offered to seek him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies, pardon

not

E e

me, I pray, for I have certain companions in the Tower, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: Yet Clerimond would grapple him for his Betros, giving him money, which he counttfully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after it was demanded, what was become of Hugon: a Damself standing by, said, I saw him now take horse, but where he is I know not.

Upon these words Galeran came in, and they asked him what was become of his Uncle Hugon: who making no reply, Bellylant grew incaged, and said, You shall not escape till you have revealed the Treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said, Lady, have mercy on me and I shall tell you all. Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of Treason, & has sold to the Pagans, the Emperour Orson, & the Green Mt. Which tale sore daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leaving the habit of a Pilgrim returned again to the Palace. Clerimond espousing him, said, Poor man! Where had you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said I will not marry. Valentine replied not at all, but left her. yet he, not so contented at his defection, caused a costly Mantle to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused.

A Jury having Orson and the Green Mt. in hold, caused them to be brought before him, & said unto them: Lords, you see you are at my mercy, wherefore I bid you shall never escape with Life, except you resign back unto me the City of Angory. Orson replied, We will never consent hereunto, except thou give us Hugon unto us. The Jury said unto them, Speak not of him, for he is the traitor that delivered you into my hands, & he hath your seals. Orson & the Green Mt. marvelled much thereat, & swore they would be revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these prisoners were content to yield to the King's command & so returned to Constantinople: Being come home, Clerimond told him, that he had heard tidings of Valentine, which rejoiced Orson, who lying with his Wife that night, got a Son called Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after Orson raised an Host of men to go for Angory, which when Hugon heard, he offered him the same City, & a Horse-load of Gold, & if any there durst call him Traitor (Orson excepted) he would fight with him; the Green Mt. accepted his challenge; so arming themselves, the Green Mt. came first into the List. All things set in order, they encounter'd each other with their Spears, next with their Swords, at last the Green Mt. gave Hugon such a stroke on his Helm, that he cut part of his head even off at his shoulders, so that he fell into a swoon. Thus was the Green Mt. Conquerour. Hugon reviving again, desired a Confessor, & unfolding the treason, dy'd in the place. Orson nevertheless caused his Body to be sumptuously interred. At last Hugon's Treason being blown abroad, they tendered the City

to the Emperour Orson. This being ended, they returned into Constantinople. But Clerimond marvelled he heard not of Valentine.

## C H A P. LII.

How at the end of seven years, Valentine dyed in the Pallace of Constantinople: and how Orson turned hermet.

At the end of 7 years, Valentine fell into a mortal disease, & after he dyed, Before his death an Angel appeared to him, saying, thy glass is run, for within four hours thou shalt dye: where he greatly rejoiced making signs for pen ink, and paper, when he had it, he wrote that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, & discovered the treason, after putting to it his name, he closed up the paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept: & after he laid him down & dyed, when Orson saw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor man being dead, held a letter in his hand; which Orson would have taken out, but could not when came Clerimond, & as soon as she laid hold thereon, the band opened it self. Clerimond breaking up the Letter & knowing the half Ring, said, Lords, we shall shortly hear news of Valentine: So a Secretary was called to read it at the reading hereof, great lamentation was made, but especially by Clerimond, who falling on the dead body, said: Alas I have lost all my joy, comfort & hopes for that my love should dye so near my person, & I know not of it. Now great preparations were made for his funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a single life. Thus having spoken the death of Valentine, & what became of Clerimond: Let us return to Orson who ruled the Empire of Constantinople seven years, and by his second Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Morant who after was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired, Galazy dyed, for whom Orson was exceedingly sorrowful & in the end betook him to the cloister, feeding on Bread & Roots. It happened one night that he saw a vision, it seemed to him more glorious than his tongue could utter. After this vision he awaked, & being astonished hereat, with tears he came to the Green Mt. & said, Sir I see the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to resign my estate & children unto you, & let them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a People. For I will spend the rest of my days in solitary contemplation. When the Green Mt. had heard these words he wept bitterly. But Orson comforted him saying: Weep not, but pray for me as I for you that you may accomplish that which I put you in mind to do. So taking his leave he returned a Million, & there spent the remainder of his days. The Green Mt. after he governed his children that they carefully spent their time on earth & followed their Father to his grave.



## THE TABLE.

- H**ow King *Pepin* banished Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Sister *Bellisant* in marriage to *Alexander* the Emperor of *Constantinople*. chap. 1.
- How the Arch-priest of *Constantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master, in making love to the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon. chap. 2.
- How the Arch-priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellisant*, to save his own honour, practised Treason against the innocent Lady. chap. 3.
- How the Arch-priest put on him the habit of a Knight at arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress *Bellisant*, who was lately banished. chap. 4.
- How *Bellisant* in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how she lost them. chap. 5.
- Of the Bear that bare away one of the L. *Bellisants* children. c. 6.
- How by the counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs and Taxations were raised through the City of *Constantinople*, and how the Treason came to light. chap. 7.
- How the Emperor by the counsel of his Nobility, sent for King *Pepin* to see the combat fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant. chap. 8.
- How the Merchant and the High-priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of *Bellisant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. chap. 9.
- How King *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after sailed to *Rome*, to fight against the Sarazens that had surprized that City. chap. 10.
- How King *Pepin* besieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was won again from the Sarazens. chap. 11.
- How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did shew towards *Valentine*. chap. 12.
- How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orson* in the Forrest of *Orleanse*. chap. 13.
- How *Kalenside* having conquered *Orson* the wild-man, went from the Forrest of *Orleanse*, whereas K. *Pepin* was resident. chap. 14.
- How *Haufray* and *Henry* took counsel together, to murder *Valentine* in the chamber of *Valentine*. chap. 15.

## THE TABLE.

- How Duke *Savary* sent unto K. *Pepin* for aid against the Green Kt. who would have his daughter in marriage against his will. c. 16.
- How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitain*, at a solemn Just there holden, to bear away the Love of the beautiful L. *Fezon*. ch. 17.
- How *Haufray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a troop of their confederates, lay in ambush to take away the life of *Valentine*. ch. 18.
- How *Orson* and *Grygar* fought together, how *Orson* returned victory, and caused *Grygar* to confess the Treason, who was afterwards hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. ch. 19.
- How *Grygar* being vanquished by *Orson*, confessed his Treason to King *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof against the worthy *Valentine*. ch. 20.
- How *Orson* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof: also, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him. ch. 21.
- How *Valentine* took good advice and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orson* overcame him. ch. 22.
- Orson* having conquered the Green Kt. *Valentine* caused him to be Christened and sending him to K. *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight. ch. 23.
- How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge she gave unto him. ch. 24.
- How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*; and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*. ch. 25.
- How K. *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tidings, and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured *Constantinople*. ch. 26.
- How the Green Knight justed against the two Sarazens, and having slain one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his Host were lodged within *Constantinople*. ch. 27.
- How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the Strong Castle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head they had knowledge of their Parents. ch. 28.
- How (when at *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard)



## THE TABLE.

- Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he  
 Justed for the enterance, and overcame the *Seneschal*. ch. 29.
- How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring; which the  
 Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Bra-  
 zen-head, which told him from whence he was descended. ch. 30.
- How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between  
 his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *pacolet* a Dwarf,  
 and an Enchanter. ch. 31.
- How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into  
 Portugal, to see the Lady *Bellifant Valentines* Mother, & of his  
 returning back, and the news that he brought. ch. 32.
- How *Valentine* & *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferra-  
 gus*, and how he committed them to prison, with their woful  
 lamentation. ch. 33.
- How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. ch. 34.
- How, by Art, *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson*, from the prison  
 of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their  
 Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. ch. 35.
- How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the castle of *Ferragus*, and sail-  
 ed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. ch. 36.
- How King *Ferragus* assembled all his Men of War to take revenge  
 upon *Valentine* and his Sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed  
 them into *Aquitain*. ch. 37.
- How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by  
*Ferragus*, & how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. ch. 38.
- How *Orson* tryed the constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he Mar-  
 ried her. ch. 39.
- How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthened his Forces by the aid of King  
*Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*. ch. 40.
- Of the pittifull Tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son, be-  
 fore his farewel into *Constantinople*, and what speeches passed  
 between him, his Father. and his Uncle. ch. 41.
- How *Valentine* and the Green Kt. were taken Prisoners in the bat-  
 tel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* & his men. ch. 42.
- How *Pacolet* by Enchantment, deliver'd *Kal* & the Green Kt. out  
 of the bondage of the Souldan, & how *Pac.* cozened the Souldan  
 when he had him upon his horse, & instead of carrying him to  
 Portugal brought him to *Constant*. where he was hanged. ch. 43.
- How

## THE TABLE.

- How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus*,  
 and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed  
*Pacolet*, and how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart*'s head  
 to be struck off: and how he would have married with *Cleri-  
 mond*; and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape  
 of a Woman: and how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* and  
 the Duke went with their Army to *Constantinople*, to succour the  
 Emperor: & how *Orson* led along with him his mother: and how  
 all the Pagans were slain before *Constant*. and how the Emperor  
 received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellifant* with joy. ch. 44.
- How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from  
*Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier*  
 fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused *Orson* fallily of  
 Treason, and how the Knife was found in the Kings Bed. And  
 how *Orson* claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they  
 would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of  
*France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, ar-  
 rived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end  
 slew the Dragon, & how *Valentine* after the conquest of the Dra-  
 gon, caused the K. of *Antioch* and all his Land to be Baptized,  
 and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rosamond*, &c. ch. 45.
- How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, be-  
 cause she would not wed the King of *Inde*: And of *Lucar* that  
 would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon  
 the King of *Inde*; and how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclar-  
 dy* wedded *Rosamond* the fair daughter of *Brandiffer*; and how  
*Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breathe out defiance; and  
 of the answer he brought from the Indian King: and how *Ro-  
 samond* found a way to be taken and led unto the Indian King;  
 and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and  
 sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*, &c. ch. 46.
- How *Valentine* returned back to *India*, after the Battel, and bare  
 with him the dead body of King *Murgalant*, and how he heard  
 tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the Indian King,  
 and left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how King *Lucar* caused all  
 that hundred that watched the Indian, to be drawn to death at  
 horses tails, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly  
 out of his Hoast, and went to *Angory*, and of the Vision of King  
*Pepin*, and how he went into the Holy-Land with the 12 Peers

## THE TABLE.

of *France*, & what hapned. And how *Haufray* & *Henry* betrayed their Father, King *Pepin*, and the 12 Peers of *France*. And how *Caliph* of *Bendas*, made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar*, and *Brandiffer*. And *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was intrapped in his own net. *ch. 47.*

How *Valentine* & *Pacolet* came before the Castle, & how *Pac.* rais'd up the Devil, to ask him counsel about the taking of the Castle, & how *Brandi.* brought the 12 Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, & imprisoned them. And how he besieged the city of *Angory*. And how *Bran.* having knowledge that *L.* was captive in *Angory*, made means to *Val.* to deliver him upon sufficient ransom. *ch. 48.*

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King *Lucar*: and how *Valentine* and the Duke of *Myllon* issued out of the city of *Angory*, and won the battel from the Sarazen: and how *K. Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marshal, and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to succour his Wife. *ch. 49.*

How *Valentine*, under the shape of a Physician, went into *India* to see and speak with the fair *Clerimond*: And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the K. of *Brittain*, was given to *K. Pepin* by treason. And how *Valentine* took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, & all the rest of the prisoners: And how the Emperor, *Orson* & the Green Kt. kept a strong Garrison in his Castle, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orson* and the Green Kt. left the castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the christians issued out of the city of *Angory*, and bid battel to the Sarazens. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father, & how *Myllon Daugler* returned into *France*, & *Valentine* & *Orson* into *Greece*. *c. 50.*

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage and how King *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the Green Kt. & how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made: how *Bellifant* and *Clerimond* came to know of *K. Hugon's* Treason: and how *Galeran* was hanged: and how *Orson* and the Green Knight were set free. *ch. 51.*

How at the end of 7 years, *Valentine* dyed in the Pallace of *Constantinople*, and how *Orson* turned Hermet. *ch. 52.*